# Table of Contents

Preface ........................................................................................................................................................................... viii  
   i. Foreword ........................................................................................................................................................ viii  
   ii. Audience .................................................................................................................................................. viii  
   iii. LFS Target Architectures ....................................................................................................................... ix  
   iv. Prerequisites ........................................................................................................................................... x  
   v. LFS and Standards ........................................................................................................................................ x  
   vi. Rationale for Packages in the Book .................................................................................................... xi  
   vii. Typography ........................................................................................................................................... xvii  
   viii. Structure ............................................................................................................................................... xviii  
   ix. Errata ..................................................................................................................................................... xviii  

I. Introduction .......................................................................................................................................................... 1  
   1. Introduction .............................................................................................................................................. 2  
      1.1. How to Build an LFS System ........................................................................................................... 2  
      1.2. What’s new since the last release ................................................................................................... 2  
      1.3. Changelog ....................................................................................................................................... 4  
      1.4. Resources ....................................................................................................................................... 8  
      1.5. Help .................................................................................................................................................. 9  

II. Preparing for the Build ..................................................................................................................................... 11  
   2. Preparing the Host System ...................................................................................................................... 12  
      2.1. Introduction .................................................................................................................................... 12  
      2.2. Host System Requirements .......................................................................................................... 12  
      2.3. Building LFS in Stages ................................................................................................................... 14  
      2.4. Creating a New Partition ............................................................................................................... 15  
      2.5. Creating a File System on the Partition ....................................................................................... 17  
      2.6. Setting The $LFS Variable ............................................................................................................. 17  
      2.7. Mounting the New Partition ......................................................................................................... 18  

III. Building the LFS Cross Toolchain and Temporary Tools .......................................................................... 35  
   Important Preliminary Material .................................................................................................................. xxxvi  
      i. Introduction ........................................................................................................................................ xxxvi  
      ii. Toolchain Technical Notes ................................................................................................................. xxxvi  
      iii. General Compilation Instructions .................................................................................................. xl  
   5. Compiling a Cross-Toolchain ................................................................................................................. 42  
      5.1. Introduction ..................................................................................................................................... 42  
      5.2. Binutils-2.36.1 - Pass 1 ................................................................................................................ 43
### IV. Building the LFS System

#### 6. Cross Compiling Temporary Tools
- **6.1. Introduction**
- **6.2. M4-1.4.18**
- **6.3. Ncurses-6.2**
- **6.4. Bash-5.1**
- **6.5. Coreutils-8.32**
- **6.6. Diffutils-3.7**
- **6.7. File-5.39**
- **6.8. Findutils-4.8.0**
- **6.9. Gawk-5.1.0**
- **6.10. Grep-3.6**
- **6.11. Gzip-1.10**
- **6.12. Make-4.3**
- **6.13. Patch-2.7.6**
- **6.14. Sed-4.8**
- **6.15. Tar-1.34**
- **6.16. Xz-5.2.5**
- **6.17. Binutils-2.36.1 - Pass 2**
- **6.18. GCC-10.2.0 - Pass 2**

#### 7. Entering Chroot and Building Additional Temporary Tools
- **7.1. Introduction**
- **7.2. Changing Ownership**
- **7.3. Preparing Virtual Kernel File Systems**
- **7.4. Entering the Chroot Environment**
- **7.5. Creating Directories**
- **7.6. Creating Essential Files and Symlinks**
- **7.7. Libstdc++ from GCC-10.2.0, Pass 2**
- **7.8. Gettext-0.21**
- **7.9. Bison-3.7.5**
- **7.10. Perl-5.32.1**
- **7.11. Python-3.9.2**
- **7.12. Texinfo-6.7**
- **7.13. Util-linux-2.36.2**
- **7.14. Cleaning up and Saving the Temporary System**

#### IV. Building the LFS System

#### 8. Installing Basic System Software
- **8.1. Introduction**
- **8.2. Package Management**
- **8.3. Man-pages-5.10**
- **8.4. Iana-Etc-20210202**
- **8.5. Glibc-2.33**
- **8.6. Zlib-1.2.11**
- **8.7. Bzip2-1.0.8**
| 8.55. Gawk-5.1.0 | 183 |
| 8.56. Findutils-4.8.0 | 184 |
| 8.57. Groff-1.22.4 | 185 |
| 8.58. GRUB-2.04 | 188 |
| 8.59. Less-563 | 190 |
| 8.60. Gzip-1.10 | 191 |
| 8.61. IPRoute2-5.10.0 | 193 |
| 8.62. Kbd-2.4.0 | 195 |
| 8.63. Libpipeline-1.5.3 | 197 |
| 8.64. Make-4.3 | 198 |
| 8.65. Patch-2.7.6 | 199 |
| 8.66. Man-DB-2.9.4 | 200 |
| 8.67. Tar-1.34 | 203 |
| 8.68. Texinfo-6.7 | 204 |
| 8.69. Vim-8.2.2433 | 206 |
| 8.70. Systemd-247 | 209 |
| 8.71. D-Bus-1.12.20 | 215 |
| 8.72. Procps-ng-3.3.17 | 217 |
| 8.73. Util-linux-2.36.2 | 219 |
| 8.74. E2fsprogs-1.46.1 | 224 |
| 8.75. About Debugging Symbols | 227 |
| 8.76. Stripping Again | 227 |
| 8.77. Cleaning Up | 228 |
| 9. System Configuration | 230 |
| 9.1. Introduction | 230 |
| 9.2. General Network Configuration | 230 |
| 9.3. Overview of Device and Module Handling | 234 |
| 9.4. Managing Devices | 237 |
| 9.5. Configuring the system clock | 238 |
| 9.6. Configuring the Linux Console | 239 |
| 9.7. Configuring the System Locale | 240 |
| 9.8. Creating the /etc/inputrc File | 242 |
| 9.9. Creating the /etc/shells File | 244 |
| 9.10. Systemd Usage and Configuration | 244 |
| 10. Making the LFS System Bootable | 248 |
| 10.1. Introduction | 248 |
| 10.2. Creating the /etc/fstab File | 248 |
| 10.3. Linux-5.10.17 | 250 |
| 10.4. Using GRUB to Set Up the Boot Process | 255 |
| 11. The End | 257 |
| 11.1. The End | 257 |
| 11.2. Get Counted | 257 |
| 11.3. Rebooting the System | 258 |
| 11.4. What Now? | 259 |
| V. Appendices | 260 |
| A. Acronyms and Terms | 261 |
| B. Acknowledgments | 264 |
C. Dependencies ................................................................................................................................................... 267
D. LFS Licenses ................................................................................................................................................... 279
  D.1. Creative Commons License ................................................................................................................... 279
  D.2. The MIT License ................................................................................................................................... 283
Index ........................................................................................................................................................................... 284
Preface

Foreword

My journey to learn and better understand Linux began back in 1998. I had just installed my first Linux distribution and had quickly become intrigued with the whole concept and philosophy behind Linux.

There are always many ways to accomplish a single task. The same can be said about Linux distributions. A great many have existed over the years. Some still exist, some have morphed into something else, yet others have been relegated to our memories. They all do things differently to suit the needs of their target audience. Because so many different ways to accomplish the same end goal exist, I began to realize I no longer had to be limited by any one implementation. Prior to discovering Linux, we simply put up with issues in other Operating Systems as you had no choice. It was what it was, whether you liked it or not. With Linux, the concept of choice began to emerge. If you didn't like something, you were free, even encouraged, to change it.

I tried a number of distributions and could not decide on any one. They were great systems in their own right. It wasn't a matter of right and wrong anymore. It had become a matter of personal taste. With all that choice available, it became apparent that there would not be a single system that would be perfect for me. So I set out to create my own Linux system that would fully conform to my personal preferences.

To truly make it my own system, I resolved to compile everything from source code instead of using pre-compiled binary packages. This “perfect” Linux system would have the strengths of various systems without their perceived weaknesses. At first, the idea was rather daunting. I remained committed to the idea that such a system could be built.

After sorting through issues such as circular dependencies and compile-time errors, I finally built a custom-built Linux system. It was fully operational and perfectly usable like any of the other Linux systems out there at the time. But it was my own creation. It was very satisfying to have put together such a system myself. The only thing better would have been to create each piece of software myself. This was the next best thing.

As I shared my goals and experiences with other members of the Linux community, it became apparent that there was a sustained interest in these ideas. It quickly became plain that such custom-built Linux systems serve not only to meet user specific requirements, but also serve as an ideal learning opportunity for programmers and system administrators to enhance their (existing) Linux skills. Out of this broadened interest, the Linux From Scratch Project was born.

This Linux From Scratch book is the central core around that project. It provides the background and instructions necessary for you to design and build your own system. While this book provides a template that will result in a correctly working system, you are free to alter the instructions to suit yourself, which is, in part, an important part of this project. You remain in control; we just lend a helping hand to get you started on your own journey.

I sincerely hope you will have a great time working on your own Linux From Scratch system and enjoy the numerous benefits of having a system that is truly your own.

---

Gerard Beekmans
gerard@linuxfromscratch.org

Audience

There are many reasons why you would want to read this book. One of the questions many people raise is, “why go through all the hassle of manually building a Linux system from scratch when you can just download and install an existing one?”
One important reason for this project’s existence is to help you learn how a Linux system works from the inside out. Building an LFS system helps demonstrate what makes Linux tick, and how things work together and depend on each other. One of the best things that this learning experience can provide is the ability to customize a Linux system to suit your own unique needs.

Another key benefit of LFS is that it allows you to have more control over the system without relying on someone else's Linux implementation. With LFS, you are in the driver's seat and dictate every aspect of the system.

LFS allows you to create very compact Linux systems. When installing regular distributions, you are often forced to install a great many programs which are probably never used or understood. These programs waste resources. You may argue that with today's hard drive and CPUs, such resources are no longer a consideration. Sometimes, however, you are still constrained by size considerations if nothing else. Think about bootable CDs, USB sticks, and embedded systems. Those are areas where LFS can be beneficial.

Another advantage of a custom built Linux system is security. By compiling the entire system from source code, you are empowered to audit everything and apply all the security patches desired. It is no longer necessary to wait for somebody else to compile binary packages that fix a security hole. Unless you examine the patch and implement it yourself, you have no guarantee that the new binary package was built correctly and adequately fixes the problem.

The goal of Linux From Scratch is to build a complete and usable foundation-level system. If you do not wish to build your own Linux system from scratch, you may nevertheless benefit from the information in this book.

There are too many other good reasons to build your own LFS system to list them all here. In the end, education is by far the most powerful of reasons. As you continue in your LFS experience, you will discover the power that information and knowledge truly bring.

**LFS Target Architectures**

The primary target architectures of LFS are the AMD/Intel x86 (32-bit) and x86_64 (64-bit) CPUs. On the other hand, the instructions in this book are also known to work, with some modifications, with the Power PC and ARM CPUs. To build a system that utilizes one of these CPUs, the main prerequisite, in addition to those on the next page, is an existing Linux system such as an earlier LFS installation, Ubuntu, Red Hat/Fedora, SuSE, or other distribution that targets the architecture that you have. Also note that a 32-bit distribution can be installed and used as a host system on a 64-bit AMD/Intel computer.

For building LFS, the gain of building on a 64-bit system compared to a 32-bit system is minimal. For example, in a test build of LFS-9.1 on a Core i7-4790 CPU based system, using 4 cores, the following statistics were measured:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Architecture</th>
<th>Build Time</th>
<th>Build Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32-bit</td>
<td>239.9 minutes</td>
<td>3.6 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit</td>
<td>233.2 minutes</td>
<td>4.4 GB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As you can see, on the same hardware, the 64-bit build is only 3% faster and is 22% larger than the 32-bit build. If you plan to use LFS as a LAMP server, or a firewall, a 32-bit CPU may be largely sufficient. On the other hand, several packages in BLFS now need more than 4GB of RAM to be built and/or to run, so that if you plan to use LFS as a desktop, the LFS authors recommend building on a 64-bit system.

The default 64-bit build that results from LFS is considered a “pure” 64-bit system. That is, it supports 64-bit executables only. Building a “multi-lib” system requires compiling many applications twice, once for a 32-bit system and once for a 64-bit system. This is not directly supported in LFS because it would interfere with the educational objective of providing the instructions needed for a straightforward base Linux system. Some LFS/BLFS editors maintain a fork of LFS for multilib, which is accessible at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/~thomas/multilib/index.html. But it is an advanced topic.
Prerequisites

Building an LFS system is not a simple task. It requires a certain level of existing knowledge of Unix system administration in order to resolve problems and correctly execute the commands listed. In particular, as an absolute minimum, you should already have the ability to use the command line (shell) to copy or move files and directories, list directory and file contents, and change the current directory. It is also expected that you have a reasonable knowledge of using and installing Linux software.

Because the LFS book assumes at least this basic level of skill, the various LFS support forums are unlikely to be able to provide you with much assistance in these areas. You will find that your questions regarding such basic knowledge will likely go unanswered or you will simply be referred to the LFS essential pre-reading list.

Before building an LFS system, we recommend reading the following:

• Software-Building-HOWTO http://www.tldp.org/HOWTO/Software-Building-HOWTO.html
  This is a comprehensive guide to building and installing “generic” Unix software packages under Linux. Although it was written some time ago, it still provides a good summary of the basic techniques needed to build and install software.

• Beginner's Guide to Installing from Source http://moi.vonos.net/linux/beginners-installing-from-source/
  This guide provides a good summary of basic skills and techniques needed to build software from source code.

LFS and Standards

The structure of LFS follows Linux standards as closely as possible. The primary standards are:

• POSIX.1-2008.
• Filesystem Hierarchy Standard (FHS) Version 3.0
• Linux Standard Base (LSB) Version 5.0 (2015)

The LSB has four separate standards: Core, Desktop, Runtime Languages, and Imaging. In addition to generic requirements there are also architecture specific requirements. There are also two areas for trial use: Gtk3 and Graphics. LFS attempts to conform to the architectures discussed in the previous section.

Note

Many people do not agree with the requirements of the LSB. The main purpose of defining it is to ensure that proprietary software will be able to be installed and run properly on a compliant system. Since LFS is source based, the user has complete control over what packages are desired and many choose not to install some packages that are specified by the LSB.

Creating a complete LFS system capable of passing the LSB certifications tests is possible, but not without many additional packages that are beyond the scope of LFS. These additional packages have installation instructions in BLFS.

Packages supplied by LFS needed to satisfy the LSB Requirements

**LSB Core:**
Bash, Bc, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, File, Findutils, Gawk, Grep, Gzip, M4, Man-DB, Ncurses, Procps, Psmisc, Sed, Shadow, Tar, Util-linux, Zlib

**LSB Desktop:**
None
**LSB Runtime Languages:** Perl

**LSB Imaging:** None

**LSB Gtk3 and LSB Graphics (Trial Use):** None

**Packages supplied by BLFS needed to satisfy the LSB Requirements**

**LSB Core:** At, Batch (a part of At), Cpio, Ed, Fcrontab, LSB-Tools, NSPR, NSS, PAM, Pax, Sendmail (or Postfix or Exim), time

**LSB Desktop:** Alsa, ATK, Cairo, Desktop-file-utils, Freetype, Fontconfig, Gdk-pixbuf, Glib2, GTK+2, Icon-naming-utils, Libjpeg-turbo, Libpng, Libtiff, Libxml2, MesaLib, Pango, Xdg-utils, Xorg

**LSB Runtime Languages:** Python, Libxml2, Libxslt

**LSB Imaging:** CUPS, Cups-filters, Ghostscript, SANE

**LSB Gtk3 and LSB Graphics (Trial Use):** GTK+3

**Packages not supplied by LFS or BLFS needed to satisfy the LSB Requirements**

**LSB Core:** None

**LSB Desktop:** Qt4 (but Qt5 is provided)

**LSB Runtime Languages:** None

**LSB Imaging:** None

**LSB Gtk3 and LSB Graphics (Trial Use):** None

**Rationale for Packages in the Book**

As stated earlier, the goal of LFS is to build a complete and usable foundation-level system. This includes all packages needed to replicate itself while providing a relatively minimal base from which to customize a more complete system based on the choices of the user. This does not mean that LFS is the smallest system possible. Several important packages are included that are not strictly required. The lists below document the rationale for each package in the book.

- **Acl**
  
  This package contains utilities to administer Access Control Lists, which are used to define more fine-grained discretionary access rights for files and directories.

- **Attr**
  
  This package contains programs for administering extended attributes on filesystem objects.

- **Autoconf**

  This package contains programs for producing shell scripts that can automatically configure source code from a developer's template. It is often needed to rebuild a package after updates to the build procedures.

- **Automake**

  This package contains programs for generating Make files from a template. It is often needed to rebuild a package after updates to the build procedures.

- **Bash**
This package satisfies an LSB core requirement to provide a Bourne Shell interface to the system. It was chosen over other shell packages because of its common usage and extensive capabilities beyond basic shell functions.

- **Bc**
  This package provides an arbitrary precision numeric processing language. It satisfies a requirement needed when building the Linux kernel.

- **Binutils**
  This package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files. The programs in this package are needed to compile most of the packages in an LFS system and beyond.

- **Bison**
  This package contains the GNU version of yacc (Yet Another Compiler Compiler) needed to build several other LFS programs.

- **Bzip2**
  This package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It is required to decompress many LFS packages.

- **Check**
  This package contains a test harness for other programs.

- **Coreutils**
  This package contains a number of essential programs for viewing and manipulating files and directories. These programs are needed for command line file management, and are necessary for the installation procedures of every package in LFS.

- **D-Bus**
  This package contains programs to implement a message bus system, which a simple way for applications to talk to one another.

- **DejaGNU**
  This package contains a framework for testing other programs.

- **Diffutils**
  This package contains programs that show the differences between files or directories. These programs can be used to create patches, and are also used in many packages' build procedures.

- **E2fsprogs**
  This package contains the utilities for handling the ext2, ext3 and ext4 file systems. These are the most common and thoroughly tested file systems that Linux supports.

- **Expat**
  This package contains a relatively small XML parsing library. It is required by the XML::Parser Perl module.

- **Expect**
  This package contains a program for carrying out scripted dialogues with other interactive programs. It is commonly used for testing other packages. It is only installed in the temporary toolchain.

- **File**
This package contains a utility for determining the type of a given file or files. A few packages need it in their build scripts.

- Findutils
  This package contains programs to find files in a file system. It is used in many packages' build scripts.

- Flex
  This package contains a utility for generating programs that recognize patterns in text. It is the GNU version of the lex (lexical analyzer) program. It is required to build several LFS packages.

- Gawk
  This package contains programs for manipulating text files. It is the GNU version of awk (Aho-Weinberg-Kernighan). It is used in many other packages' build scripts.

- GCC
  This package is the Gnu Compiler Collection. It contains the C and C++ compilers as well as several others not built by LFS.

- GDBM
  This package contains the GNU Database Manager library. It is used by one other LFS package, Man-DB.

- Gettext
  This package contains utilities and libraries for internationalization and localization of numerous packages.

- Glibc
  This package contains the main C library. Linux programs will not run without it.

- GMP
  This package contains math libraries that provide useful functions for arbitrary precision arithmetic. It is required to build GCC.

- Gperf
  This package contains a program that generates a perfect hash function from a key set. It is required for Eudev.

- Grep
  This package contains programs for searching through files. These programs are used by most packages' build scripts.

- Groff
  This package contains programs for processing and formatting text. One important function of these programs is to format man pages.

- GRUB
  This package is the Grand Unified Boot Loader. It is one of several boot loaders available, but is the most flexible.

- Gzip
  This package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It is needed to decompress many packages in LFS and beyond.

- Iana-etc
This package provides data for network services and protocols. It is needed to enable proper networking capabilities.

- **Inetutils**
  This package contains programs for basic network administration.

- **Intltool**
  This package contains tools for extracting translatable strings from source files.

- **IProute2**
  This package contains programs for basic and advanced IPv4 and IPv6 networking. It was chosen over the other common network tools package (net-tools) for its IPv6 capabilities.

- **Kbd**
  This package contains key-table files, keyboard utilities for non-US keyboards, and a number of console fonts.

- **Kmod**
  This package contains programs needed to administer Linux kernel modules.

- **Less**
  This package contains a very nice text file viewer that allows scrolling up or down when viewing a file. It is also used by Man-DB for viewing manpages.

- **Libcap**
  This package implements the user-space interfaces to the POSIX 1003.1e capabilities available in Linux kernels.

- **Libelf**
  The elfutils project provides libraries and tools for ELF files and DWARF data. Most utilities in this package are available in other packages, but the library is needed to build the Linux kernel using the default (and most efficient) configuration.

- **Libffi**
  This package implements a portable, high level programming interface to various calling conventions. Some programs may not know at the time of compilation what arguments are to be passed to a function. For instance, an interpreter may be told at run-time about the number and types of arguments used to call a given function. Libffi can be used in such programs to provide a bridge from the interpreter program to compiled code.

- **Libpipeline**
  The Libpipeline package contains a library for manipulating pipelines of subprocesses in a flexible and convenient way. It is required by the Man-DB package.

- **Libtool**
  This package contains the GNU generic library support script. It wraps the complexity of using shared libraries in a consistent, portable interface. It is needed by the test suites in other LFS packages.

- **Linux Kernel**
  This package is the Operating System. It is the Linux in the GNU/Linux environment.

- **M4**
This package contains a general text macro processor useful as a build tool for other programs.

• Make
  This package contains a program for directing the building of packages. It is required by almost every package in LFS.

• Man-DB
  This package contains programs for finding and viewing man pages. It was chosen instead of the man package due to superior internationalization capabilities. It supplies the man program.

• Man-pages
  This package contains the actual contents of the basic Linux man pages.

• Meson
  This package provides a software tool for automating the building of software. The main goal for Meson is to minimize the amount of time that software developers need to spend configuring their build system.

• MPC
  This package contains functions for the arithmetic of complex numbers. It is required by GCC.

• MPFR
  This package contains functions for multiple precision arithmetic. It is required by GCC.

• Ninja
  This package contains a small build system with a focus on speed. It is designed to have its input files generated by a higher-level build system, and to run builds as fast as possible.

• Ncurses
  This package contains libraries for terminal-independent handling of character screens. It is often used to provide cursor control for a menuing system. It is needed by a number of packages in LFS.

• Openssl
  This package provides management tools and libraries relating to cryptography. These are useful for providing cryptographic functions to other packages, including the Linux kernel.

• Patch
  This package contains a program for modifying or creating files by applying a patch file typically created by the diff program. It is needed by the build procedure for several LFS packages.

• Perl
  This package is an interpreter for the runtime language PERL. It is needed for the installation and test suites of several LFS packages.

• Pkg-config
  This package provides a program that returns meta-data about an installed library or package.

• Procps-NG
  This package contains programs for monitoring processes. These programs are useful for system administration, and are also used by the LFS Bootscripts.
• Psmisc
   This package contains programs for displaying information about running processes. These programs are useful for system administration.

• Python 3
   This package provides an interpreted language that has a design philosophy that emphasizes code readability.

• Readline
   This package is a set of libraries that offers command-line editing and history capabilities. It is used by Bash.

• Sed
   This package allows editing of text without opening it in a text editor. It is also needed by most LFS packages' configure scripts.

• Shadow
   This package contains programs for handling passwords in a secure way.

• Systemd
   This package provides an init program and several additional boot and system control capabilities as an alternative to Sysvinit. It is used by many commercial distributions.

• Tar
   This package provides archiving and extraction capabilities of virtually all packages used in LFS.

• Tcl
   This package contains the Tool Command Language used in many test suites in LFS packages.

• Texinfo
   This package contains programs for reading, writing, and converting info pages. It is used in the installation procedures of many LFS packages.

• Util-linux
   This package contains miscellaneous utility programs. Among them are utilities for handling file systems, consoles, partitions, and messages.

• Vim
   This package contains an editor. It was chosen because of its compatibility with the classic vi editor and its huge number of powerful capabilities. An editor is a very personal choice for many users and any other editor could be substituted if desired.

• XML::Parser
   This package is a Perl module that interfaces with Expat.

• XZ Utils
   This package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It provides the highest compression generally available and is useful for decompressing packages in XZ or LZMA format.

• Zlib
   This package contains compression and decompression routines used by some programs.
• Zstd

This package contains compression and decompression routines used by some programs. It provide high compression ratios and a very wide range of compression / speed trade-offs.

**Typography**

To make things easier to follow, there are a few typographical conventions used throughout this book. This section contains some examples of the typographical format found throughout Linux From Scratch.

`./configure --prefix=/usr`

This form of text is designed to be typed exactly as seen unless otherwise noted in the surrounding text. It is also used in the explanation sections to identify which of the commands is being referenced.

In some cases, a logical line is extended to two or more physical lines with a backslash at the end of the line.

```
CC="gcc -B/usr/bin/" ../binutils-2.18/configure \
--prefix=/tools --disable-nls --disable-werror
```

Note that the backslash must be followed by an immediate return. Other whitespace characters like spaces or tab characters will create incorrect results.

```
install-info: unknown option '--dir-file=/mnt/lfs/usr/info/dir'
```

This form of text (fixed-width text) shows screen output, usually as the result of commands issued. This format is also used to show filenames, such as `/etc/ld.so.conf`.

**Emphasis**

This form of text is used for several purposes in the book. Its main purpose is to emphasize important points or items.

```
http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/
```

This format is used for hyperlinks both within the LFS community and to external pages. It includes HOWTOs, download locations, and websites.

```
cat > $LFS/etc/group << "EOF"
root:x:0:
bin:x:1:
......
EOF
```

This format is used when creating configuration files. The first command tells the system to create the file `$LFS/etc/group` from whatever is typed on the following lines until the sequence End Of File (EOF) is encountered. Therefore, this entire section is generally typed as seen.

<REPLACED TEXT>

This format is used to encapsulate text that is not to be typed as seen or for copy-and-paste operations.

[OPTIONAL TEXT]

This format is used to encapsulate text that is optional.

`passwd(5)`
This format is used to refer to a specific manual (man) page. The number inside parentheses indicates a specific section inside the manuals. For example, passwd has two man pages. Per LFS installation instructions, those two man pages will be located at /usr/share/man/man1/passwd.1 and /usr/share/man/man5/passwd.5. When the book uses passwd(5) it is specifically referring to /usr/share/man/man5/passwd.5. man passwd will print the first man page it finds that matches “passwd”, which will be /usr/share/man/man1/passwd.1. For this example, you will need to run man 5 passwd in order to read the page being specified. Note that most man pages do not have duplicate page names in different sections. Therefore, man <program name> is generally sufficient.

Structure

This book is divided into the following parts.

Part I - Introduction

Part I explains a few important notes on how to proceed with the LFS installation. This section also provides meta-information about the book.

Part II - Preparing for the Build

Part II describes how to prepare for the building process—making a partition, downloading the packages, and compiling temporary tools.

Part III - Building the LFS Cross Toolchain and Temporary Tools

Part III provides instructions for building the tools needed for constructing the final LFS system.

Part IV - Building the LFS System

Part IV guides the reader through the building of the LFS system—compiling and installing all the packages one by one, setting up the boot scripts, and installing the kernel. The resulting Linux system is the foundation on which other software can be built to expand the system as desired. At the end of this book, there is an easy to use reference listing all of the programs, libraries, and important files that have been installed.

Part V - Appendices

Part V provides information about the book itself including acronyms and terms, acknowledgments, package dependencies, a listing of LFS boot scripts, licenses for the distribution of the book, and a comprehensive index of packages, programs, libraries, and scripts.

Errata

The software used to create an LFS system is constantly being updated and enhanced. Security warnings and bug fixes may become available after the LFS book has been released. To check whether the package versions or instructions in this release of LFS need any modifications to accommodate security vulnerabilities or other bug fixes, please visit http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/errata/systemd/ before proceeding with your build. You should note any changes shown and apply them to the relevant section of the book as you progress with building the LFS system.
Part I. Introduction
Chapter 1. Introduction

1.1. How to Build an LFS System

The LFS system will be built by using an already installed Linux distribution (such as Debian, OpenMandriva, Fedora, or openSUSE). This existing Linux system (the host) will be used as a starting point to provide necessary programs, including a compiler, linker, and shell, to build the new system. Select the “development” option during the distribution installation to be able to access these tools.

As an alternative to installing a separate distribution onto your machine, you may wish to use a LiveCD from a commercial distribution.

Chapter 2 of this book describes how to create a new Linux native partition and file system. This is the place where the new LFS system will be compiled and installed. Chapter 3 explains which packages and patches need to be downloaded to build an LFS system and how to store them on the new file system. Chapter 4 discusses the setup of an appropriate working environment. Please read Chapter 4 carefully as it explains several important issues you need be aware of before beginning to work your way through Chapter 5 and beyond.

Chapter 5, explains the installation of the initial tool chain, (binutils, gcc, and glibc) using cross compilation techniques to isolate the new tools from the host system.

Chapter 6 shows you how to cross-compile basic utilities using the just built cross-toolchain.

Chapter 7 then enters a "chroot" environment and uses the previously built tools to build the additional tools needed to build and test the final system.

This effort to isolate the new system from the host distribution may seem excessive. A full technical explanation as to why this is done is provided in Toolchain Technical Notes.

In Chapter 8, The full LFS system is built. Another advantage provided by the chroot environment is that it allows you to continue using the host system while LFS is being built. While waiting for package compilations to complete, you can continue using your computer as normal.

To finish the installation, the basic system configuration is set up in Chapter 9, and the kernel and boot loader are set up in Chapter 10. Chapter 11 contains information on continuing the LFS experience beyond this book. After the steps in this book have been implemented, the computer will be ready to reboot into the new LFS system.

This is the process in a nutshell. Detailed information on each step is discussed in the following chapters and package descriptions. Items that may seem complicated will be clarified, and everything will fall into place as you embark on the LFS adventure.

1.2. What's new since the last release

In this version of LFS, there has been a major reorganization of the book using techniques that avoid changing the host system and provides a more straight forward build process.

Below is a list of package updates made since the previous release of the book.

Upgraded to:

- Autoconf-2.71
• Automake-1.16.3
• Bash 5.1
• Bc 3.3.0
• Binutils-2.36.1
• Bison-3.7.5
• E2fsprogs-1.46.1
• Expat-2.2.10
• Findutils-4.8.0
• GDBM-1.19
• Glibc-2.33
• GMP-6.2.1
• Grep-3.6
• IANA-Etc-20210202
• Inetutils-2.0
• IPRoute2-5.10.0
• Kbd-2.4.0
• Kmod-28
• Less-563
• Libcap-2.48
• Libelf-0.183 (from elfutils)
• Linux-5.10.17
• Man-DB-2.9.4
• Man-pages-5.10
• Meson-0.57.1
• MPC-1.2.1
• Ninja-1.10.2
• Openssl-1.1.1j
• Perl-5.32.1
• Procps-ng-3.3.17
• Psmisc-23.4
• Python-3.9.2
• Systemd-247
• Tar-1.34
• Tcl-8.6.11
• Tzdata-2021a
• Util-Linux-2.36.2
• Vim-8.2.2433
• Zstd-1.4.8

Added:

• systemd-247-upstream_fixes-1.patch

Removed:

• bash-5.0-upstream_fixes-1.patch

1.3. Changelog

This is version 10.1-systemd of the Linux From Scratch book, dated March 1st, 2021. If this book is more than six months old, a newer and better version is probably already available. To find out, please check one of the mirrors via http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mirrors.html.

Below is a list of changes made since the previous release of the book.

Changelog Entries:

• 2021-03-01
  • [bdubbs] - LFS-10.1 released.

• 2021-02-20
  • [bdubbs] - Update to meson-0.57.1. Fixes #4821.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to Python-3.9.2. Fixes #4820.
  • [pierre] - Fix grub to prevent generation of a huge binary blob for lzma compression. Reported on the lfs-support mailing list by Frans de Boer.

• 2021-02-18
  • [bdubbs] - Fix a glibc bug that causes issues with chrooted applications. Fixes #4817.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to bc-3.3.0. Fixes #4819.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to openssl-1.1.1j. Fixes #4816.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to meson-0.57.0. Fixes #4815.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.10.17. Fixes #4807.

• 2021-02-14
  • [renodr] - Add a command explanation for 'pwait'.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to util-linux-2.36.2. Fixes #4812.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to tar-1.34. Fixes #4813.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to psmisc-23.4. Fixes #4805.
• [bdubbs] - Update to procps-ng-3.3.17. Fixes #4811.
• [bdubbs] - Update to man-db-2.9.4. Fixes #4808.
• [bdubbs] - Update to eudev-3.2.10. Fixes #4810.
• [bdubbs] - Update to elfutils-0.183. Fixes #4806.
• [bdubbs] - Update to e2fsprogs-1.46.1. Fixes #4809.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bc-3.2.7. Fixes #4814.

2021-02-01
• [bdubbs] - Update to iana-etc-20210202. Addresses #4722.
• [bdubbs] - Update to inetutils-2.0. Fixes #4803.
• [bdubbs] - Update to libcap-2.48. Fixes #4802.
• [bdubbs] - Update to binutils-2.36.1. Fixes #4804.
• [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.10.13. Fixes #4801.

2021-02-02
• [pierre] - Move tcl, expect, and dejagnu just before binutils in chapter 8: this allows to build them against chapter 8 glibc.
• [pierre] - To allow building with newer version of glibc than the host distribution, build a "file" executable for the host before cross-compiling it.
• [pierre] - Replace the relinked libctf (which may incorrectly link against libz from the host distribution) with the one that was linked during "make" in binutils-pass2. Thanks to Xi Ruoyao for the fix.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bc-3.2.6. Fixes #4800.
• [bdubbs] - Update to glibc-2.33. Fixes #4799.
• [bdubbs] - Minor change to mountfs boot script. Fixes #4798.

2021-02-01
• [bdubbs] - Update to vim-8.2.2433. Addresses #4500.
• [bdubbs] - Update to iana-etc-20210115. Addresses #4722.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bc-3.2.5. Fixes #4797.
• [bdubbs] - Update to e2fsprogs-1.46.0. Fixes #4796.
• [bdubbs] - Update to autoconf-2.71. Fixes #4795.
• [bdubbs] - Update to tzdata-2021a. Fixes #4793.
• [bdubbs] - Update to perl-5.32.1. Fixes #4792.
• [bdubbs] - Update to libcap-2.47. Fixes #4791.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bison-3.7.5. Fixes #4790.
• [bdubbs] - Update to binutils-2.36. Fixes #4789.
• [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.10.12. Fixes #4786.

2020-01-16
• [renodr] - Update to findutils-4.8.0. Fixes #4785.
• [renodr] - Update to tar-1.33. Fixes #4783.
• [renodr] - Update to linux-5.10.7. Fixes #4782.
• [renodr] - Update to meson-0.56.2. Fixes #4781.
• [renodr] - Update to tcl-8.6.11. Fixes #4780.

2021-01-13
• [xry111] - Fix util-linux uuidd socket path.
• [xry111] - Remove various references to deprecated /var/run, use /run instead.

2021-01-01
• [bdubbs] - Update to vim-8.2.2253. Addresses #4500.
• [bdubbs] - Update to iana-etc-20201229. Addresses #4722.
• [bdubbs] - Update to gdbm-1.19. Fixes #4779.
• [bdubbs] - Update to tzdata-2020f. Fixes #4777.
• [bdubbs] - Update to man-pages-5.10. Fixes #4776.
• [bdubbs] - Update to iproute2-5.10.0. Fixes #4775.
• [bdubbs] - Update to zstd-1.4.8. Fixes #4774.
• [bdubbs] - Update to kbd-2.4.0. Fixes #4773.
• [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.10.4. Fixes #4772.

2020-12-15
• [bdubbs] - Update to libcap-2.46. Fixes #4771.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bc-3.2.4. Fixes #4770.
• [bdubbs] - Update to autoconf-2.70. Fixes #4769.
• [bdubbs] - Update to openssl-1.1.1i. Fixes #4768.
• [bdubbs] - Update to Python3-3.9.1. Fixes #4767.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bash-5.1 and readline-8.1. Fixes #4764.

2020-12-07
• [ken] - Patch meson-0.56.0 to correctly create pkgconfig files re static libraries (re sysprof in BLFS). Fixes #4675.

2020-12-03
• [renodr] - Update to linux-5.9.12. Fixes #4673.
• [renodr] - Update to bc-3.2.3. Fixes #4672.
• [renodr] - Update to systemd-247. Fixes #4745.

2020-12-01
• [bdubbs] - Update to ninja-1.10.2. Fixes #4760.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bc-3.2.1. Fixes #4759.
• [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.9.11. Fixes #4758.
• [bdubbs] - Update to automake-1.16.3. Fixes #4757.
• [bdubbs] - Update to util-linux-2.36.1. Fixes #4755.
• [bdubbs] - Update to iana-etc-20201124. Addresses #4722.
• [bdubbs] - Update to vim-8.2.2070. Addresses #4500.

2020-11-15
• [bdubbs] - Update to gmp-6.2.1. Fixes #4754.
• [bdubbs] - Update to iana-etc-20201110. Addresses #4722.
• [bdubbs] - Update to man-pages-5.09. Fixes #4750.
• [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.9.8. Fixes #4749.
• [bdubbs] - Update to libcap-2.45. Fixes #4751.
• [bdubbs] - Update to grep-3.6. Fixes #4752.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bison-3.7.4. Fixes #4753.

2020-11-01
• [bdubbs] - Update to elfutils-0.182. Fixes #4748.
• [bdubbs] - Update to meson-0.56.0. Fixes #4747.
• [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.9.2. Fixes #4746.
• [bdubbs] - Update to mpc-1.2.1. Fixes #4744.
• [bdubbs] - Update to less-563. Fixes #4743.
• [bdubbs] - Update to tzdata-2020d. Fixes #4742.

2020-10-20
• [bdubbs] - Update to iproute2-5.9.0. Fixes #4739.
• [bdubbs] - Update to tzdata-2020c. Fixes #4741.
• [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.9.1. Fixes #4740.

2020-10-15
• [bdubbs] - Update to iana-etc-20201012. Addresses #4722.
• [bdubbs] - Update to vim-8.2.1845. Addresses #4500.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bison-3.7.3. Fixes #4738.
• [bdubbs] - Update to tzdata-2020b. Fixes #4737.
• [bdubbs] - Update to libcap-2.44. Fixes #4735.
• [bdubbs] - Update to expat-2.2.10. Fixes #4734.
• [bdubbs] - Update to bc-3.1.6. Fixes #4732.
• [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.9. Fixes #4733.

2020-10-01
• [bdubbs] - Update to grep-3.5. Fixes #4731.
• [bdubbs] - Update to Python-3.8.6. Fixes #4730.
• [bdubbs] - Update to openssl-1.1.1h. Fixes #4729.
• [bdubbs] - Update to binutils-2.35.1. Fixes #4728.
• 2020-09-27
  • [bdubbs] - Add autoconf-2.69-consolidated_fixes-1.patch which allows autoconf tests to pass.
• 2020-09-15
  • [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.8.9. Fixes #4723.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to bison-3.7.2. Fixes #4724.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to elfutils-0.181. Fixes #4725.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to meson-0.55.3. Fixes #4726.
• 2020-09-02
  • [bdubbs] - Update to linux-5.8.5. Fixes #4721.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to ninja-1.10.1. Fixes #4719.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to mpc-1.2.0. Fixes #4717.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to meson-0.55.1. Fixes #4716.
  • [bdubbs] - Update to libcap-2.43. Fixes #4715.
• 2020-09-01
  • [bdubbs] - LFS-10.0 released.

1.4. Resources

1.4.1. FAQ

If during the building of the LFS system you encounter any errors, have any questions, or think there is a typo in the book, please start by consulting the Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) that is located at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/faq/.

1.4.2. Mailing Lists

The linuxfromscratch.org server hosts a number of mailing lists used for the development of the LFS project. These lists include the main development and support lists, among others. If the FAQ does not solve the problem you are having, the next step would be to search the mailing lists at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/search.html.

For information on the different lists, how to subscribe, archive locations, and additional information, visit http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mail.html.

1.4.3. IRC

Several members of the LFS community offer assistance on Internet Relay Chat (IRC). Before using this support, please make sure that your question is not already answered in the LFS FAQ or the mailing list archives. You can find the IRC network at irc.freenode.net. The support channel is named #LFS-support.
1.4.4. Mirror Sites

The LFS project has a number of world-wide mirrors to make accessing the website and downloading the required packages more convenient. Please visit the LFS website at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mirrors.html for a list of current mirrors.

1.4.5. Contact Information

Please direct all your questions and comments to one of the LFS mailing lists (see above).

1.5. Help

If an issue or a question is encountered while working through this book, please check the FAQ page at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/faq/#generalfaq. Questions are often already answered there. If your question is not answered on this page, try to find the source of the problem. The following hint will give you some guidance for troubleshooting: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/errors.txt.

If you cannot find your problem listed in the FAQ, search the mailing lists at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/search.html.

We also have a wonderful LFS community that is willing to offer assistance through the mailing lists and IRC (see the Section 1.4, “Resources” section of this book). However, we get several support questions every day and many of them can be easily answered by going to the FAQ and by searching the mailing lists first. So, for us to offer the best assistance possible, you need to do some research on your own first. That allows us to focus on the more unusual support needs. If your searches do not produce a solution, please include all relevant information (mentioned below) in your request for help.

1.5.1. Things to Mention

Apart from a brief explanation of the problem being experienced, the essential things to include in any request for help are:

- The version of the book being used (in this case 10.1-systemd)
- The host distribution and version being used to create LFS
- The output from the Host System Requirements script
- The package or section the problem was encountered in
- The exact error message or symptom being received
- Note whether you have deviated from the book at all

**Note**

Deviating from this book does *not* mean that we will not help you. After all, LFS is about personal preference. Being upfront about any changes to the established procedure helps us evaluate and determine possible causes of your problem.

1.5.2. Configure Script Problems

If something goes wrong while running the `configure` script, review the `config.log` file. This file may contain errors encountered during `configure` which were not printed to the screen. Include the relevant lines if you need to ask for help.
1.5.3. Compilation Problems

Both the screen output and the contents of various files are useful in determining the cause of compilation problems. The screen output from the `configure` script and the `make` run can be helpful. It is not necessary to include the entire output, but do include enough of the relevant information. Below is an example of the type of information to include from the screen output from `make`:

```
gcc -DALIASPATH="/mnt/lfs/usr/share/locale:" -DLOCALEDIR="/mnt/lfs/usr/share/locale" -DLIBDIR="/mnt/lfs/usr/lib" -DINCLUDEDIR="/mnt/lfs/usr/include" -DHAVE_CONFIG_H -I. -I. -g -O2 -c getopt1.c
```

```
gcc -g -O2 -static -o make ar.o arscan.o commands.o dir.o expand.o file.o function.o getopt.o implicit.o job.o main.o misc.o read.o remade.o rule.o signname.o variable.o vpath.o default.o remote-stub.o version.o opt1.o -lutil job.o: In function `load_too_high':
/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1/job.c:1565: undefined reference to `getloadavg'
collect2: ld returned 1 exit status
make[2]: *** [make] Error 1
make[2]: Leaving directory `/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1'
make[1]: *** [all-recursive] Error 1
make[1]: Leaving directory `/lfs/tmp/make-3.79.1'
make: *** [all-recursive-am] Error 2
```

In this case, many people would just include the bottom section:

```
make [2]: *** [make] Error 1
```

This is not enough information to properly diagnose the problem because it only notes that something went wrong, not what went wrong. The entire section, as in the example above, is what should be saved because it includes the command that was executed and the associated error message(s).

An excellent article about asking for help on the Internet is available online at [http://catb.org/~esr/faqs/smart-questions.html](http://catb.org/~esr/faqs/smart-questions.html). Read and follow the hints in this document to increase the likelihood of getting the help you need.
Part II. Preparing for the Build
Chapter 2. Preparing the Host System

2.1. Introduction

In this chapter, the host tools needed for building LFS are checked and, if necessary, installed. Then a partition which will host the LFS system is prepared. We will create the partition itself, create a file system on it, and mount it.

2.2. Host System Requirements

Your host system should have the following software with the minimum versions indicated. This should not be an issue for most modern Linux distributions. Also note that many distributions will place software headers into separate packages, often in the form of “<package-name>-devel” or “<package-name>-dev”. Be sure to install those if your distribution provides them.

Earlier versions of the listed software packages may work, but have not been tested.

- **Bash-3.2** (/bin/sh should be a symbolic or hard link to bash)
- **Binutils-2.25** (Versions greater than 2.36.1 are not recommended as they have not been tested)
- **Bison-2.7** (/usr/bin/yacc should be a link to bison or small script that executes bison)
- **Bzip2-1.0.4**
- **Coreutils-6.9**
- **Diffutils-2.8.1**
- **Findutils-4.2.31**
- **Gawk-4.0.1** (/usr/bin/awk should be a link to gawk)
- **GCC-6.2** including the C++ compiler, g++ (Versions greater than 10.2.0 are not recommended as they have not been tested)
- **Glibc-2.11** (Versions greater than 2.33 are not recommended as they have not been tested)
- **Grep-2.5.1a**
- **Gzip-1.3.12**
- **Linux Kernel-3.2**
- **M4-1.4.10**
- **Make-4.0**
- **Patch-2.5.4**
- **Perl-5.8.8**
- **Python-3.4**
- **Sed-4.1.5**
- **Tar-1.22**

The reason for the kernel version requirement is that we specify that version when building glibc in Chapter 6 at the recommendation of the developers. It is also required by udev.

If the host kernel is earlier than 3.2 you will need to replace the kernel with a more up to date version. There are two ways you can go about this. First, see if your Linux vendor provides a 3.2 or later kernel package. If so, you may wish to install it. If your vendor doesn't offer an acceptable kernel package, or you would prefer not to install it, you can compile a kernel yourself. Instructions for compiling the kernel and configuring the boot loader (assuming the host uses GRUB) are located in Chapter 10.

- **M4-1.4.10**
- **Make-4.0**
- **Patch-2.5.4**
- **Perl-5.8.8**
- **Python-3.4**
- **Sed-4.1.5**
- **Tar-1.22**
Important

Note that the symlinks mentioned above are required to build an LFS system using the instructions contained within this book. Symlinks that point to other software (such as dash, mawk, etc.) may work, but are not tested or supported by the LFS development team, and may require either deviation from the instructions or additional patches to some packages.

To see whether your host system has all the appropriate versions, and the ability to compile programs, run the following:

```
cat > version-check.sh << "EOF"
#!/bin/bash
# Simple script to list version numbers of critical development tools
export LC_ALL=C
bash --version | head -n1 | cut -d" " -f2-4
MYSH=$(readlink -f /bin/sh)
echo "/bin/sh -> $MYSH"
echo $MYSH | grep -q bash || echo "ERROR: /bin/sh does not point to bash"
unset MYSH

echo -n "Binutils: "; ld --version | head -n1 | cut -d" " -f3-
bison --version | head -n1

if [ -h /usr/bin/yacc ]; then
echo "/usr/bin/yacc -> `readlink -f /usr/bin/yacc`";
elif [ -x /usr/bin/yacc ]; then
echo yacc is `/usr/bin/yacc --version | head -n1`
else
echo "yacc not found"
fi

bzip2 --version 2>&1 < /dev/null | head -n1 | cut -d" " -f1,6-
echo -n "Coreutils: "; chown --version | head -n1 | cut -d")" -f2
diff --version | head -n1
find --version | head -n1
gawk --version | head -n1

if [ -h /usr/bin/awk ]; then
echo "/usr/bin/awk -> `readlink -f /usr/bin/awk`";
elif [ -x /usr/bin/awk ]; then
echo awk is `/usr/bin/awk --version | head -n1`
else
echo "awk not found"
fi
```

13
bash version-check.sh

2.3. Building LFS in Stages

LFS is designed to be built in one session. That is, the instructions assume that the system will not be shut down during the process. That does not mean that the system has to be done in one sitting. The issue is that certain procedures have to be re-accomplished after a reboot if resuming LFS at different points.

2.3.1. Chapters 1–4

These chapters are accomplished on the host system. When restarting, be careful of the following:

- Procedures done as the root user after Section 2.4 need to have the LFS environment variable set FOR THE ROOT USER.

2.3.2. Chapter 5–6

- The /mnt/lfs partition must be mounted.
- These two chapters must be done as user lfs. A su -lfs needs to be done before any task in these chapters. Failing to do that, you are at risk of installing packages to the host, and potentially rendering it unusable.
- The procedures in General Compilation Instructions are critical. If there is any doubt about installing a package, ensure any previously expanded tarballs are removed, then re-extract the package files, and complete all instructions in that section.

2.3.3. Chapter 7–10

- The /mnt/lfs partition must be mounted.
• A few operations, from “Changing Ownership” to “Entering the Chroot Environment” must be done as the root user, with the LFS environment variable set for the root user.

• When entering chroot, the LFS environment variable must be set for root. The LFS variable is not used afterwards.

• The virtual file systems must be mounted. This can be done before or after entering chroot by changing to a host virtual terminal and, as root, running the commands in Section 7.3.2, “Mounting and Populating /dev” and Section 7.3.3, “Mounting Virtual Kernel File Systems”.

2.4. Creating a New Partition

Like most other operating systems, LFS is usually installed on a dedicated partition. The recommended approach to building an LFS system is to use an available empty partition or, if you have enough unpartitioned space, to create one.

A minimal system requires a partition of around 10 gigabytes (GB). This is enough to store all the source tarballs and compile the packages. However, if the LFS system is intended to be the primary Linux system, additional software will probably be installed which will require additional space. A 30 GB partition is a reasonable size to provide for growth. The LFS system itself will not take up this much room. A large portion of this requirement is to provide sufficient free temporary storage as well as for adding additional capabilities after LFS is complete. Additionally, compiling packages can require a lot of disk space which will be reclaimed after the package is installed.

Because there is not always enough Random Access Memory (RAM) available for compilation processes, it is a good idea to use a small disk partition as swap space. This is used by the kernel to store seldom-used data and leave more memory available for active processes. The swap partition for an LFS system can be the same as the one used by the host system, in which case it is not necessary to create another one.

Start a disk partitioning program such as cfdisk or fdisk with a command line option naming the hard disk on which the new partition will be created—for example /dev/sda for the primary disk drive. Create a Linux native partition and a swap partition, if needed. Please refer to cfdisk(8) or fdisk(8) if you do not yet know how to use the programs.

Note
For experienced users, other partitioning schemes are possible. The new LFS system can be on a software RAID array or an LVM logical volume. However, some of these options require an initramfs, which is an advanced topic. These partitioning methodologies are not recommended for first time LFS users.

Remember the designation of the new partition (e.g., sda5). This book will refer to this as the LFS partition. Also remember the designation of the swap partition. These names will be needed later for the /etc/fstab file.

2.4.1. Other Partition Issues

Requests for advice on system partitioning are often posted on the LFS mailing lists. This is a highly subjective topic. The default for most distributions is to use the entire drive with the exception of one small swap partition. This is not optimal for LFS for several reasons. It reduces flexibility, makes sharing of data across multiple distributions or LFS builds more difficult, makes backups more time consuming, and can waste disk space through inefficient allocation of file system structures.

2.4.1.1. The Root Partition

A root LFS partition (not to be confused with the /root directory) of twenty gigabytes is a good compromise for most systems. It provides enough space to build LFS and most of BLFS, but is small enough so that multiple partitions can be easily created for experimentation.
2.4.1.2. The Swap Partition
Most distributions automatically create a swap partition. Generally the recommended size of the swap partition is about twice the amount of physical RAM, however this is rarely needed. If disk space is limited, hold the swap partition to two gigabytes and monitor the amount of disk swapping.

If you want to use the hibernation feature (suspend-to-disk) of Linux, it writes out the contents of RAM to the swap partition before turning off the machine. In this case the size of the swap partition should be at least as large as the system's installed RAM.

Swapping is never good. For mechanical hard drives you can generally tell if a system is swapping by just listening to disk activity and observing how the system reacts to commands. For an SSD drive you will not be able to hear swapping but you can tell how much swap space is being used by the top or free programs. Use of an SSD drive for a swap partition should be avoided if possible. The first reaction to swapping should be to check for an unreasonable command such as trying to edit a five gigabyte file. If swapping becomes a normal occurrence, the best solution is to purchase more RAM for your system.

2.4.1.3. The Grub Bios Partition
If the boot disk has been partitioned with a GUID Partition Table (GPT), then a small, typically 1 MB, partition must be created if it does not already exist. This partition is not formatted, but must be available for GRUB to use during installation of the boot loader. This partition will normally be labeled 'BIOS Boot' if using fdisk or have a code of EF02 if using gdisk.

Note
The Grub Bios partition must be on the drive that the BIOS uses to boot the system. This is not necessarily the same drive where the LFS root partition is located. Disks on a system may use different partition table types. The requirement for this partition depends only on the partition table type of the boot disk.

2.4.1.4. Convenience Partitions
There are several other partitions that are not required, but should be considered when designing a disk layout. The following list is not comprehensive, but is meant as a guide.

• /boot – Highly recommended. Use this partition to store kernels and other booting information. To minimize potential boot problems with larger disks, make this the first physical partition on your first disk drive. A partition size of 200 megabytes is quite adequate.

• /home – Highly recommended. Share your home directory and user customization across multiple distributions or LFS builds. The size is generally fairly large and depends on available disk space.

• /usr – A separate /usr partition is generally used if providing a server for a thin client or diskless workstation. It is normally not needed for LFS. A size of ten gigabytes will handle most installations.

• /opt – This directory is most useful for BLFS where multiple installations of large packages like Gnome or KDE can be installed without embedding the files in the /usr hierarchy. If used, 5 to 10 gigabytes is generally adequate.

• /tmp – A separate /tmp directory is rare, but useful if configuring a thin client. This partition, if used, will usually not need to exceed a couple of gigabytes.

• /usr/src – This partition is very useful for providing a location to store BLFS source files and share them across LFS builds. It can also be used as a location for building BLFS packages. A reasonably large partition of 30-50 gigabytes allows plenty of room.
Any separate partition that you want automatically mounted upon boot needs to be specified in the `/etc/fstab`. Details about how to specify partitions will be discussed in Section 10.2, “Creating the `/etc/fstab File”.

2.5. Creating a File System on the Partition

Now that a blank partition has been set up, the file system can be created. LFS can use any file system recognized by the Linux kernel, but the most common types are ext3 and ext4. The choice of file system can be complex and depends on the characteristics of the files and the size of the partition. For example:

- **ext2**
  
is suitable for small partitions that are updated infrequently such as `/boot`.

- **ext3**
  
is an upgrade to ext2 that includes a journal to help recover the partition's status in the case of an unclean shutdown. It is commonly used as a general purpose file system.

- **ext4**
  
is the latest version of the ext file system family of partition types. It provides several new capabilities including nano-second timestamps, creation and use of very large files (16 TB), and speed improvements.


LFS assumes that the root file system (`/`) is of type ext4. To create an `ext4` file system on the LFS partition, run the following:

```
mkfs -v -t ext4 /dev/<xxx>
```

Replace `<xxx>` with the name of the LFS partition.

If you are using an existing `swap` partition, there is no need to format it. If a new `swap` partition was created, it will need to be initialized with this command:

```
mkswap /dev/<yyy>
```

Replace `<yyy>` with the name of the `swap` partition.

2.6. Setting The `$LFS` Variable

Throughout this book, the environment variable `LFS` will be used several times. You should ensure that this variable is always defined throughout the LFS build process. It should be set to the name of the directory where you will be building your LFS system - we will use `/mnt/lfs` as an example, but the directory choice is up to you. If you are building LFS on a separate partition, this directory will be the mount point for the partition. Choose a directory location and set the variable with the following command:

```
export LFS=/mnt/lfs
```

Having this variable set is beneficial in that commands such as `mkdir -v $LFS/tools` can be typed literally. The shell will automatically replace “$LFS” with “/mnt/lfs” (or whatever the variable was set to) when it processes the command line.
Caution

Do not forget to check that LFS is set whenever you leave and reenter the current working environment (such as when doing a su to root or another user). Check that the LFS variable is set up properly with:

```
echo $LFS
```

Make sure the output shows the path to your LFS system's build location, which is /mnt/lfs if the provided example was followed. If the output is incorrect, use the command given earlier on this page to set $LFS to the correct directory name.

Note

One way to ensure that the LFS variable is always set is to edit the .bash_profile file in both your personal home directory and in /root/.bash_profile and enter the export command above. In addition, the shell specified in the /etc/passwd file for all users that need the LFS variable needs to be bash to ensure that the /root/.bash_profile file is incorporated as a part of the login process.

Another consideration is the method that is used to log into the host system. If logging in through a graphical display manager, the user's .bash_profile is not normally used when a virtual terminal is started. In this case, add the export command to the .bashrc file for the user and root. In addition, some distributions have instructions to not run the .bashrc instructions in a non-interactive bash invocation. Be sure to add the export command before the test for non-interactive use.

2.7. Mounting the New Partition

Now that a file system has been created, the partition needs to be made accessible. In order to do this, the partition needs to be mounted at a chosen mount point. For the purposes of this book, it is assumed that the file system is mounted under the directory specified by the LFS environment variable as described in the previous section.

Create the mount point and mount the LFS file system by running:

```
mkdir -pv $LFS
mount -v -t ext4 /dev/<xxx> $LFS
```

Replace <xxx> with the designation of the LFS partition.

If using multiple partitions for LFS (e.g., one for / and another for /usr), mount them using:

```
mkdir -pv $LFS
mount -v -t ext4 /dev/<xxx> $LFS
mkdir -v $LFS/usr
mount -v -t ext4 /dev/<yyy> $LFS/usr
```

Replace <xxx> and <yyy> with the appropriate partition names.

Ensure that this new partition is not mounted with permissions that are too restrictive (such as the nosuid or nodev options). Run the mount command without any parameters to see what options are set for the mounted LFS partition. If nosuid and/or nodev are set, the partition will need to be remounted.
Warning

The above instructions assume that you will not be restarting your computer throughout the LFS process. If you shut down your system, you will either need to remount the LFS partition each time you restart the build process or modify your host system's /etc/fstab file to automatically remount it upon boot. For example:

```
/dev/<xxx> /mnt/lfs ext4 defaults 1 1
```

If you use additional optional partitions, be sure to add them also.

If you are using a `swap` partition, ensure that it is enabled using the `swapon` command:

```
/sbin/swapon -v /dev/<zzz>
```

Replace `<zzz>` with the name of the `swap` partition.

Now that there is an established place to work, it is time to download the packages.
Chapter 3. Packages and Patches

3.1. Introduction

This chapter includes a list of packages that need to be downloaded in order to build a basic Linux system. The listed version numbers correspond to versions of the software that are known to work, and this book is based on their use. We highly recommend against using newer versions because the build commands for one version may not work with a newer version. The newest package versions may also have problems that require work-arounds. These work-arounds will be developed and stabilized in the development version of the book.

Download locations may not always be accessible. If a download location has changed since this book was published, Google (http://www.google.com/) provides a useful search engine for most packages. If this search is unsuccessful, try one of the alternative means of downloading discussed at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/packages.html#packages.

Downloaded packages and patches will need to be stored somewhere that is conveniently available throughout the entire build. A working directory is also required to unpack the sources and build them. $LFS/sources can be used both as the place to store the tarballs and patches and as a working directory. By using this directory, the required elements will be located on the LFS partition and will be available during all stages of the building process.

To create this directory, execute the following command, as user root, before starting the download session:

```
mkdir -v $LFS/sources
```

Make this directory writable and sticky. “Sticky” means that even if multiple users have write permission on a directory, only the owner of a file can delete the file within a sticky directory. The following command will enable the write and sticky modes:

```
chmod -v a+wt $LFS/sources
```

There are several ways to obtain all the necessary packages and patches to build LFS:

- The files can be downloaded individually as described in the next two sections.
- For stable versions of the book, a tarball of all the needed files can be downloaded from one of the LFS files mirrors listed at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/mirrors.html#files.
- The files can be downloaded using wget and a wget-list as described below.

To download all of the packages and patches by using wget-list as an input to the wget command, use:

```
wget --input-file=wget-list --continue --directory-prefix=$LFS/sources
```

Additionally, starting with LFS-7.0, there is a separate file, md5sums, which can be used to verify that all the correct packages are available before proceeding. Place that file in $LFS/sources and run:

```
pushd $LFS/sources
  md5sum -c md5sums
popd
```

This check can be used after retrieving the needed files with any of the methods listed above.

3.2. All Packages

Download or otherwise obtain the following packages:
• Acl (2.2.53) - 513 KB:
  Home page: https://savannah.nongnu.org/projects/acl
  Download: http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/acl/acl-2.2.53.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: 007aabf1dbb550bcddde52a244cd1070

• Attr (2.4.48) - 457 KB:
  Home page: https://savannah.nongnu.org/projects/attr
  Download: http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/attr/attr-2.4.48.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: bc1e5cb5c96d99b24886f1f527d3bb3d

• Autoconf (2.71) - 1,263 KB:
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/autoconf/
  MD5 sum: 12cfa1687ffa2606337efe1a64416106

• Automake (1.16.3) - 1,554 KB:
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/automake/
  Download: http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/automake/automake-1.16.3.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: c27f608a4e1f302ec7ce42f1251c184e

• Bash (5.1) - 10,214 KB:
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/bash/
  MD5 sum: bb91a17fd6c9032c26d0b2b78b50aff5

• Bc (3.3.0) - 225 KB:
  Home page: https://git.yzena.com/gavin/bc
  Download: https://github.com/gavinhoward/bc/releases/download/3.3.0/bc-3.3.0.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: 452ae2d467b1d7212bb7896c0c689825

• Binutils (2.36.1) - 22,239 KB:
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/binutils/
  MD5 sum: 628d490d976d8957279bbbf06cf29d4

• Bison (3.7.5) - 2,561 KB:
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/bison/
  Download: http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/bison/bison-3.7.5.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: 9b762dc24a6723f86d14d957d3deeb90

• Bzip2 (1.0.8) - 792 KB:
  Download: https://www.sourceware.org/pub/bzip2/bzip2-1.0.8.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: 67e051268d0c475ea773822f7500d0e5

• Check (0.15.2) - 760 KB:
  Home page: https://libcheck.github.io/check
  Download: https://github.com/libcheck/check/releases/download/0.15.2/check-0.15.2.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: 50fcafecde5a380415b12e9c574e0b2

• Coreutils (8.32) - 5,418 KB:
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/coreutils/
  MD5 sum: 022042695b7d5bcf1a93559a9735e668
• D-Bus (1.12.20) - 2,048 KB:
Home page: https://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/dbus
Download: https://dbus.freedesktop.org/releases/dbus/dbus-1.12.20.tar.gz
MD5 sum: dfe8a71f412e0b53be26ed4fbfdec91c4

• DejaGNU (1.6.2) - 514 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/dejagnu/
Download: http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/dejagnu/dejagnu-1.6.2.tar.gz
MD5 sum: e1b07516533f351b3aba3423fafaef6d

• Diffutils (3.7) - 1,415 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/diffutils/
MD5 sum: 4824adc0e95dbb11f11dbdada6a1e461

• E2fsprogs (1.46.1) - 9,269 KB:
Home page: http://e2fsprogs.sourceforge.net/
Download: https://downloads.sourceforge.net/project/e2fsprogs/e2fsprogs/v1.46.1/e2fsprogs-1.46.1.tar.gz
MD5 sum: 8c5258552b7ca6bda2bdecb27b3a4

• Elfutils (0.183) - 8,896 KB:
Home page: https://sourceware.org/ftp/elfutils/
Download: https://sourceware.org/ftp/elfutils/0.183/elfutils-0.183.tar.bz2
MD5 sum: 6f58aa1b9a5f1a5681b1cbe63e0da2d67

• Expat (2.2.10) - 416 KB:
Home page: https://libexpat.github.io/
Download: https://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/expat/expat-2.2.10.tar.xz
MD5 sum: e0fe49a6b3480827c9455e4cfc799133

• Expect (5.45.4) - 618 KB:
Home page: https://core.tcl.tk/expect/
Download: https://prdownloads.sourceforge.net/expat/expat-2.45.4.tar.gz
MD5 sum: 00fe8de158422f5ccd2666512329bd2

• File (5.39) - 932 KB:
Home page: https://www.darwinsys.com/file/
MD5 sum: 1c450306053622803a25647d88f80f25

Note
File (5.39) may no longer be available at the listed location. The site administrators of the master download location occasionally remove older versions when new ones are released. An alternative download location that may have the correct version available can also be found at: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/download.html#ftp.

• Findutils (4.8.0) - 1,940 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/findutils/
MD5 sum: eee2e6380931a77d9350b43186
• Flex (2.6.4) - 1,386 KB:
Home page: https://github.com/westes/flex
Download: https://github.com/westes/flex/releases/download/v2.6.4/flex-2.6.4.tar.gz
MD5 sum: 2882e3179748cc9f9c23ec593d6adc8d

• Gawk (5.1.0) - 3,081 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/gawk/
Download: http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gawk/gawk-5.1.0.tar.xz
MD5 sum: 8470c34eeec41c1aa0c5d89e630df50

• GCC (10.2.0) - 73,247 KB:
Home page: https://gcc.gnu.org/
Download: http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gcc/gcc-10.2.0/gcc-10.2.0.tar.xz
MD5 sum: e9fd9b1789155ad09bcf3ae747596b50

• GDBM (1.19) - 946 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/gdbm/
MD5 sum: aeb29c6a90350a4c959cd1df38cd0a7e

• Gettext (0.21) - 9,487 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/gettext/
Download: http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gettext/gettext-0.21.tar.xz
MD5 sum: 40996bbaf7d1356d3c22e33a8b255b31

• Glibc (2.33) - 16,663 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/libc/
MD5 sum: 390bbd889c7e8e8a7041564cb6b27cca

• GMP (6.2.1) - 1,980 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/gmp/
MD5 sum: 0b82665c4a92fd2ade7440c13fcaa42b

• Gperf (3.1) - 1,188 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/gperf/
MD5 sum: 9e251c0a618ad0824b51117d5d9db87e

• Grep (3.6) - 1,553 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/grep/
MD5 sum: f47fe27049510b2249dba7f862a1c301f5

• Groff (1.22.4) - 4,044 KB:
Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/groff/
Download: http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/groff/groff-1.22.4.tar.gz
MD5 sum: 08fb04335e2f5e73f23ea4c3adbf0c5f
• GRUB (2.04) - 6,245 KB:
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/grub/
  MD5 sum: 5aaca6713b47ca2456d8324a58755ac7

• Gzip (1.10) - 757 KB:
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/gzip/
  Download: http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gzip/gzip-1.10.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: 691b1221694c3394f1c537df4eee39d3

• Iana-Etc (20210202) - 578 KB:
  Home page: https://www.iana.org/protocols
  Download: https://github.com/Mic92/iana-etc/releases/download/20210202/iana-etc-20210202.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: 1c193a4d6ca36274570d1505140a7bee

• Inetutils (2.0) - 1,462 KB:
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/inetutils/
  MD5 sum: 5e1018502cd131ed8e42339f6b5c98aa

• Intltool (0.51.0) - 159 KB:
  Home page: https://freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/intltool
  Download: https://launchpad.net/intltool/trunk/0.51.0/+download/intltool-0.51.0.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: 12e517cac2b57a0121cda351570f1e63

• IPRoute2 (5.10.0) - 781 KB:
  Home page: https://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/net/iproute2/
  Download: https://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/net/iproute2/iproute2-5.10.0.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: 19ffeaf080a21e600453776b7225f3319

• Kbd (2.4.0) - 1,095 KB:
  Home page: http://ftp.altlinux.org/pub/people/legion/kbd
  Download: https://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/kbd/kbd-2.4.0.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: 3cac5be0096f0f7b32dcb3c53831380

• Kmod (28) - 540 KB:
  MD5 sum: 0a2b887b1b3dfb8c0b3f41f598203e56

• Less (563) - 328 KB:
  Home page: http://www.greenwoodsoftware.com/less/
  Download: http://www.greenwoodsoftware.com/less/less-563.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: 1ee44fa71447a845f6eef5b3f38d2781

• Libcap (2.48) - 130 KB:
  Home page: https://sites.google.com/site/fullycapable/
  MD5 sum: ca71693a9abe4e0ad9cc33a755ee47e0

• Libffi (3.3) - 1,275 KB:
  Home page: https://sourceware.org/libffi/
  Download: https://sourceware.org/pub/libffi/libffi-3.3.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: 6313289e32f1d38a9df4770b014a2ca7
• *Libpipeline (1.5.3) - 972 KB:*
  Download: [http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/libpipeline/libpipeline-1.5.3.tar.gz](http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/libpipeline/libpipeline-1.5.3.tar.gz)
  MD5 sum: dad443d0911cf9f0f1bd90a334bc9004

• *Libtool (2.4.6) - 951 KB:*
  MD5 sum: 1bfb9b923f2c1339b4d2ce1807064aa5

• *Linux (5.10.17) - 113,548 KB:*
  Home page: [https://www.kernel.org/](https://www.kernel.org/)
  Download: [https://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/kernel/v5.x/linux-5.10.17.tar.xz](https://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/kernel/v5.x/linux-5.10.17.tar.xz)
  MD5 sum: 4908707ed841923d8d1814130d5c380f

  **Note**
  The Linux kernel is updated relatively often, many times due to discoveries of security vulnerabilities. The latest available stable kernel version may be used, unless the errata page says otherwise.
  For users with limited speed or expensive bandwidth who wish to update the Linux kernel, a baseline version of the package and patches can be downloaded separately. This may save some time or cost for a subsequent patch level upgrade within a minor release.

• *M4 (1.4.18) - 1,180 KB:*
  MD5 sum: 730bb15d96ffee47e148d1e09235af82

• *Make (4.3) - 2,263 KB:*
  MD5 sum: fc7a67ea86ace13195b0bce683fd4469

• *Man-DB (2.9.4) - 1,865 KB:*
  Home page: [https://www.nongnu.org/man-db/](https://www.nongnu.org/man-db/)
  Download: [http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/man-db/man-db-2.9.4.tar.xz](http://download.savannah.gnu.org/releases/man-db/man-db-2.9.4.tar.xz)
  MD5 sum: 6e233a555f7b9ae91ce7cd0faa322bce

• *Man-pages (5.10) - 1,707 KB:*
  MD5 sum: 4ae3f74a1bbeddd919936e1058642644c

• *Meson (0.57.1) - 1,806 KB:*
  Home page: [https://mesonbuild.com](https://mesonbuild.com)
  Download: [https://github.com/mesonbuild/meson/releases/download/0.57.1/meson-0.57.1.tar.gz](https://github.com/mesonbuild/meson/releases/download/0.57.1/meson-0.57.1.tar.gz)
  MD5 sum: fbd744560351491892478a36a1586815

• *MPC (1.2.1) - 820 KB:*
  MD5 sum: 9f16c976c25bb0f76b50be749cd7a3a8
• **MPFR (4.1.0) - 1,490 KB:**
  Home page: https://www.mpfr.org/
  Download: http://www.mpfr.org/mpfr-4.1.0/mpfr-4.1.0.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: bdd3d5efba9c17da8d83a35ec552baef

• **Ncurses (6.2) - 3,346 KB:**
  Home page: http://www.gnu.org/software/ncurses/
  MD5 sum: e812da327b1c2214aclaed440ea3ae8d

• **Ninja (1.10.2) - 209 KB:**
  Home page: https://ninja-build.org/
  Download: https://github.com/ninja-build/ninja/archive/v1.10.2/ninja-1.10.2.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: 639f75bc2e3b19ab893eaf2c810d4eb4

• **OpenSSL (1.1.1j) - 9,593 KB:**
  Home page: https://www.openssl.org/
  Download: https://www.openssl.org/source/openssl-1.1.1j.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: cccaa064ed860a2b4d1303811bf5c682

• **Patch (2.7.6) - 766 KB:**
  Home page: https://savannah.gnu.org/projects/patch/
  MD5 sum: 78ad9937e4caadcb1526ef1853730d5

• **Perl (5.32.1) - 12,316 KB:**
  Home page: https://www.perl.org/
  Download: https://www.cpan.org/src/5.0/perl-5.32.1.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: 7f104064b906ad8c7329ca5e409a32d7

• **Pkg-config (0.29.2) - 1,970 KB:**
  Home page: https://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/pkg-config
  Download: https://pkg-config.freedesktop.org/releases/pkg-config-0.29.2.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: f6e931e319531b736fad017f470e68a

• **Procps (3.3.17) - 985 KB:**
  Home page: https://sourceforge.net/projects/procps-ng
  Download: https://sourceforge.net/projects/procps-ng/files/Production/procps-ng-3.3.17.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: d60613e88c2f442ebd462b5a75313d56

• **Psmisc (23.4) - 362 KB:**
  Home page: http://psmisc.sourceforge.net/
  Download: https://sourceforge.net/projects/psmisc/files/psmisc/psmisc-23.4.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: 8114cd4489b95308efe2509c3a406bbf

• **Python (3.9.2) - 18,477 KB:**
  Home page: https://www.python.org/
  Download: https://www.python.org/ftp/python/3.9.2/Python-3.9.2.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: f0dc9000312abeb16de4eccce9a870ab

• **Python Documentation (3.9.2) - 6,659 KB:**
  MD5 sum: 719cd64a4c5768b646b716df20229400
• **Readline (8.1) - 2,924 KB:**
  Home page: [https://tiswww.case.edu/php/chet/readline/rltop.html](https://tiswww.case.edu/php/chet/readline/rltop.html)
  MD5 sum: e9557dd5b1409f5d7b37ef717c64518e

• **Sed (4.8) - 1,317 KB:**
  MD5 sum: 6d906edfdb3202304059233f51f9a71d

• **Shadow (4.8.1) - 1,574 KB:**
  MD5 sum: 4b05eff8a427cf50e615bda324b5bc45

• **Systemd (247) - 9,656 KB:**
  Home page: [https://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/systemd/](https://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/systemd/)
  MD5 sum: b0d6e603b814908acc69db29bbfb023c

• **Systemd Man Pages (247) - 612 KB:**
  Home page: [https://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/systemd/](https://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/systemd/)
  MD5 sum: 438c98be200e1c3b308e58a3399d4465

---

**Note**

The Linux From Scratch team generates its own tarball of the man pages using the systemd source. This is done in order to avoid unnecessary dependencies.

• **Tar (1.34) - 2,174 KB:**
  Download: [http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu.tar/tar-1.34.tar.xz](http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu.tar/tar-1.34.tar.xz)
  MD5 sum: 9a08d29a9ac4727130b5708347c0f5cf

• **Tcl (8.6.11) - 10,020 KB:**
  Download: [https://downloads.sourceforge.net/tcl/tcl8.6.11-src.tar.gz](https://downloads.sourceforge.net/tcl/tcl8.6.11-src.tar.gz)
  MD5 sum: 8a4c004f48984a03a7747e9ba06e4da4

• **Tcl Documentation (8.6.11) - 1,172 KB:**
  Download: [https://downloads.sourceforge.net/tcl/tcl8.6.11-html.tar.gz](https://downloads.sourceforge.net/tcl/tcl8.6.11-html.tar.gz)
  MD5 sum: e358a9140c3a171e42f18c8a7f6a36ea

• **Texinfo (6.7) - 4,237 KB:**
  MD5 sum: d4c5d8cc84438c5993ec5163a59522a6

• **Time Zone Data (2021a) - 403 KB:**
  Home page: [https://www.iana.org/time-zones](https://www.iana.org/time-zones)
  Download: [https://www.iana.org/time-zones/repository/releases/tzdata2021a.tar.gz](https://www.iana.org/time-zones/repository/releases/tzdata2021a.tar.gz)
  MD5 sum: 20ee7d1da671c6eac56339c8df85b bd
• Util-linux (2.36.2) - 5,223 KB:
  Home page: http://freecode.com/projects/util-linux
  Download: https://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/util-linux/v2.36/util-linux-2.36.2.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: f78419af679ac9678190ad961eb3cf27

• Vim (8.2.2433) - 15,051 KB:
  Home page: https://www.vim.org
  Download: http://anduin.linuxfromscratch.org/LFS/vim-8.2.2433.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: a26555c8919cf40938d2428d834bf913

  Note: The version of vim changes daily. To get the latest version, go to https://github.com/vim/vim/releases.

• XML::Parser (2.46) - 249 KB:
  Home page: https://github.com/chorny/XML-Parser
  Download: https://cpan.metacpan.org/authors/id/T/TO/TODDR/XML-Parser-2.46.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: 80bb18a8e6240fcf7ec2f7b57601c170

• Xz Utils (5.2.5) - 1,122 KB:
  Home page: https://tukaani.org/xz
  Download: https://tukaani.org/xz/xz-5.2.5.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: aa1621ec7013a19abab52a8aff04fe5b

• Zlib (1.2.11) - 457 KB:
  Home page: https://www.zlib.net/
  Download: https://zlib.net/zlib-1.2.11.tar.xz
  MD5 sum: 85adef240c5f370b308da8ec938951a68

• Zstd (1.4.8) - 1,762 KB:
  Home page: https://facebook.github.io/zstd/
  Download: https://github.com/facebook/zstd/releases/download/v1.4.8/zstd-1.4.8.tar.gz
  MD5 sum: e873db7cfa5ef05832e6d55a5a572840

Total size of these packages: about 428 MB

3.3. Needed Patches

In addition to the packages, several patches are also required. These patches correct any mistakes in the packages that should be fixed by the maintainer. The patches also make small modifications to make the packages easier to work with. The following patches will be needed to build an LFS system:

• Bzip2 Documentation Patch - 1.6 KB:
  Download: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/10.1/bzip2-1.0.8-install_docs-1.patch
  MD5 sum: 6a5ac7e89b791aae556de0f745916f7f

• Coreutils Internationalization Fixes Patch - 166 KB:
  Download: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/10.1/coreutils-8.32-i18n-1.patch
  MD5 sum: cd8ebed2a67fff2e231026df91af6776

• Glibc FHS Patch - 2.8 KB:
  Download: http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/10.1/glibc-2.33-fhs-1.patch
  MD5 sum: 9a5997c3452909b1769918c759eff8a2
• **Kbd Backspace/Delete Fix Patch - 12 KB:**
  Download: [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/10.1/kbd-2.4.0-backspace-1.patch](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/lfs/10.1/kbd-2.4.0-backspace-1.patch)
  MD5 sum: f75cca16a38da6caa7d52151f7136895

• **Systemd Upstream Fixes Patch - 8 KB:**
  MD5 sum: 573a166f3620875208f78bf4dc431c8b

Total size of these patches: about 190.4 KB

In addition to the above required patches, there exist a number of optional patches created by the LFS community. These optional patches solve minor problems or enable functionality that is not enabled by default. Feel free to peruse the patches database located at [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/downloads/](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/patches/downloads/) and acquire any additional patches to suit your system needs.
Chapter 4. Final Preparations

4.1. Introduction

In this chapter, we will perform a few additional tasks to prepare for building the temporary system. We will create a set of directories in $LFS for the installation of the temporary tools, add an unprivileged user to reduce risk, and create an appropriate build environment for that user. We will also explain the unit of time we use to measure how long LFS packages take to build, or “SBUs”, and give some information about package test suites.

4.2. Creating a limited directory layout in LFS filesystem

The first task performed in the LFS partition is to create a limited directory hierarchy so that programs compiled in Chapter 6 may be installed in their final location. This is needed so that those temporary programs be overwritten when rebuilding them in Chapter 8.

Create the required directory layout by running the following as root:

```bash
mkdir -pv $LFS/{bin,etc,lib,sbin,usr,var}
case $(uname -m) in
  x86_64) mkdir -pv $LFS/lib64 ;;
esac
```

Programs in Chapter 6 will be compiled with a cross-compiler (more details in section Toolchain Technical Notes). In order to separate this cross-compiler from the other programs, it will be installed in a special directory. Create this directory with:

```bash
mkdir -pv $LFS/tools
```

4.3. Adding the LFS User

When logged in as user root, making a single mistake can damage or destroy a system. Therefore, the packages in the next two chapters are built as an unprivileged user. You could use your own user name, but to make it easier to set up a clean working environment, create a new user called lfs as a member of a new group (also named lfs) and use this user during the installation process. As root, issue the following commands to add the new user:

```bash
groupadd lfs
useradd -s /bin/bash -g lfs -m -k /dev/null lfs
```

The meaning of the command line options:

- `s /bin/bash`
  This makes bash the default shell for user lfs.

- `g lfs`
  This option adds user lfs to group lfs.

- `m`
  This creates a home directory for lfs.
-k /dev/null

This parameter prevents possible copying of files from a skeleton directory (default is /etc/skel) by changing the input location to the special null device.

lfs

This is the actual name for the created user.

To log in as lfs (as opposed to switching to user lfs when logged in as root, which does not require the lfs user to have a password), give lfs a password:

```
passwd lfs
```

Grant lfs full access to all directories under $LFS by making lfs the directory owner:

```
chown -v lfs $LFS/{usr,lib,var,etc,bin,sbin,tools}
case $(uname -m) in
  x86_64) chown -v lfs $LFS/lib64 ;;
esac
```

If a separate working directory was created as suggested, give user lfs ownership of this directory:

```
chown -v lfs $LFS/sources
```

Note

In some host systems, the following command does not complete properly and suspends the login to the lfs user to the background. If the prompt "lfs:~$" does not appear immediately, entering the `fg` command will fix the issue.

Next, login as user lfs. This can be done via a virtual console, through a display manager, or with the following substitute/switch user command:

```
su - lfs
```

The “-” instructs su to start a login shell as opposed to a non-login shell. The difference between these two types of shells can be found in detail in bash(1) and info bash.

4.4. Setting Up the Environment

Set up a good working environment by creating two new startup files for the bash shell. While logged in as user lfs, issue the following command to create a new .bash_profile:

```
cat > ~/.bash_profile << "EOF"
exec env -i HOME=\$HOME TERM=\$TERM PS1='\u:\w\$ ' /bin/bash
EOF
```

When logged on as user lfs, the initial shell is usually a login shell which reads the /etc/profile of the host (probably containing some settings and environment variables) and then .bash_profile. The exec env -i../../bin/bash command in the .bash_profile file replaces the running shell with a new one with a completely empty environment, except for the HOME, TERM, and PS1 variables. This ensures that no unwanted and potentially hazardous environment variables from the host system leak into the build environment. The technique used here achieves the goal of ensuring a clean environment.
The new instance of the shell is a *non-login* shell, which does not read, and execute, the contents of `/etc/profile` or `.bash_profile` files, but rather reads, and executes, the `.bashrc` file instead. Create the `.bashrc` file now:

```
cat > ~/.bashrc << "EOF"
set +h
umask 022
LFS=/mnt/lfs
LC_ALL=POSIX
LFS_TGT=$(uname -m)-lfs-linux-gnu
PATH=/usr/bin
if [ ! -L /bin ]; then PATH=/bin:$PATH; fi
PATH=$LFS/tools/bin:$PATH
CONFIG_SITE=$LFS/usr/share/config.site
export LFS LC_ALL LFS_TGT PATH CONFIG_SITE
EOF
```

The meaning of the settings in `.bashrc`

```
set +h
```

The `set +h` command turns off `bash`'s hash function. Hashing is ordinarily a useful feature—`bash` uses a hash table to remember the full path of executable files to avoid searching the `PATH` time and again to find the same executable. However, the new tools should be used as soon as they are installed. By switching off the hash function, the shell will always search the `PATH` when a program is to be run. As such, the shell will find the newly compiled tools in `$LFS/tools` as soon as they are available without remembering a previous version of the same program in a different location.

```
umask 022
```

Setting the user file-creation mask (umask) to 022 ensures that newly created files and directories are only writable by their owner, but are readable and executable by anyone (assuming default modes are used by the `open(2)` system call, new files will end up with permission mode 644 and directories with mode 755).

```
LFS=/mnt/lfs
```

The `LFS` variable should be set to the chosen mount point.

```
LC_ALL=POSIX
```

The `LC_ALL` variable controls the localization of certain programs, making their messages follow the conventions of a specified country. Setting `LC_ALL` to “POSIX” or “C” (the two are equivalent) ensures that everything will work as expected in the chroot environment.

```
LFS_TGT=(uname -m)-lfs-linux-gnu
```

The `LFS_TGT` variable sets a non-default, but compatible machine description for use when building our cross compiler and linker and when cross compiling our temporary toolchain. More information is contained in Toolchain Technical Notes.

```
PATH=/usr/bin
```

Many modern linux distributions have merged `/bin` and `/usr/bin`. When this is the case, the standard `PATH` variable needs just to be set to `/usr/bin/` for the Chapter 6 environment. When this is not the case, the following line adds `/bin` to the path.

```
if [ ! -L /bin ]; then PATH=/bin:$PATH; fi
```

If `/bin` is not a symbolic link, then it has to be added to the `PATH` variable.
PATH=$LFS/tools/bin:$PATH

By putting $LFS/tools/bin ahead of the standard PATH, the cross-compiler installed at the beginning of
Chapter 5 is picked up by the shell immediately after its installation. This, combined with turning off hashing,
limits the risk that the compiler from the host be used instead of the cross-compiler.

CONFIG_SITE=$LFS/usr/share/config.site

In Chapter 5 and Chapter 6, if this variable is not set, configure scripts may attempt to load configuration items
specific to some distributions from /usr/share/config.site on the host system. Override it to prevent
potential contamination from the host.

export ...

While the above commands have set some variables, in order to make them visible within any sub-shells, we
export them.

Important

Several commercial distributions add a non-documented instantiation of /etc/bash.bashrc to the
initialization of bash. This file has the potential to modify the lfs user's environment in ways that can
affect the building of critical LFS packages. To make sure the lfs user's environment is clean, check for the
presence of /etc/bash.bashrc and, if present, move it out of the way. As the root user, run:

```
[ ! -e /etc/bash.bashrc ] || mv -v /etc/bash.bashrc /etc/bash.bashrc.NOUSE
```

After use of the lfs user is finished at the beginning of Chapter 7, you can restore /etc/bash.bashrc
(if desired).

Note that the LFS Bash package we will build in Section 8.34, “Bash-5.1” is not configured to load or execute
/etc/bash.bashrc, so this file is useless on a completed LFS system.

Finally, to have the environment fully prepared for building the temporary tools, source the just-created user profile:

```
source ~/.bash_profile
```

4.5. About SBUs

Many people would like to know beforehand approximately how long it takes to compile and install each package.
Because Linux From Scratch can be built on many different systems, it is impossible to provide accurate time estimates.
The biggest package (Glibc) will take approximately 20 minutes on the fastest systems, but could take up to three days
on slower systems! Instead of providing actual times, the Standard Build Unit (SBU) measure will be used instead.

The SBU measure works as follows. The first package to be compiled from this book is binutils in Chapter 5. The time
it takes to compile this package is what will be referred to as the Standard Build Unit or SBU. All other compile times
will be expressed relative to this time.

For example, consider a package whose compilation time is 4.5 SBUs. This means that if a system took 10 minutes
to compile and install the first pass of binutils, it will take approximately 45 minutes to build this example package.
Fortunately, most build times are shorter than the one for binutils.

In general, SBUs are not entirely accurate because they depend on many factors, including the host system's version of
GCC. They are provided here to give an estimate of how long it might take to install a package, but the numbers can
vary by as much as dozens of minutes in some cases.
Note

For many modern systems with multiple processors (or cores) the compilation time for a package can be reduced by performing a "parallel make" by either setting an environment variable or telling the make program how many processors are available. For instance, an Intel i5-6500 CPU can support four simultaneous processes with:

```
export MAKEFLAGS='-j4'
```

or just building with:

```
make -j4
```

When multiple processors are used in this way, the SBU units in the book will vary even more than they normally would. In some cases, the make step will simply fail. Analyzing the output of the build process will also be more difficult because the lines of different processes will be interleaved. If you run into a problem with a build step, revert back to a single processor build to properly analyze the error messages.

4.6. About the Test Suites

Most packages provide a test suite. Running the test suite for a newly built package is a good idea because it can provide a “sanity check” indicating that everything compiled correctly. A test suite that passes its set of checks usually proves that the package is functioning as the developer intended. It does not, however, guarantee that the package is totally bug free.

Some test suites are more important than others. For example, the test suites for the core toolchain packages—GCC, binutils, and glibc—are of the utmost importance due to their central role in a properly functioning system. The test suites for GCC and glibc can take a very long time to complete, especially on slower hardware, but are strongly recommended.

Note

Running the test suites in Chapter 5 and Chapter 6 is impossible, since the programs are compiled with a cross-compiler, so are not supposed to be able to run on the build host.

A common issue with running the test suites for binutils and GCC is running out of pseudo terminals (PTYs). This can result in a high number of failing tests. This may happen for several reasons, but the most likely cause is that the host system does not have the `devpts` file system set up correctly. This issue is discussed in greater detail at `http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/faq.html#no-ptys`.

Sometimes package test suites will fail, but for reasons which the developers are aware of and have deemed non-critical. Consult the logs located at `http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/lfs/build-logs/10.1/` to verify whether or not these failures are expected. This site is valid for all tests throughout this book.
Part III. Building the LFS Cross Toolchain and Temporary Tools
Important Preliminary Material

Introduction

This part is divided into three stages: first building a cross compiler and its associated libraries; second, use this cross toolchain to build several utilities in a way that isolates them from the host distribution; third, enter the chroot environment, which further improves host isolation, and build the remaining tools needed to build the final system.

Important

With this part begins the real work of building a new system. It requires much care in ensuring that the instructions are followed exactly as the book shows them. You should try to understand what they do, and whatever your eagerness to finish your build, you should refrain from blindly type them as shown, but rather read documentation when there is something you do not understand. Also, keep track of your typing and of the output of commands, by sending them to a file, using the `tee` utility. This allows for better diagnosing if something gets wrong.

The next section gives a technical introduction to the build process, while the following one contains very important general instructions.

Toolchain Technical Notes

This section explains some of the rationale and technical details behind the overall build method. It is not essential to immediately understand everything in this section. Most of this information will be clearer after performing an actual build. This section can be referred to at any time during the process.

The overall goal of Chapter 5 and Chapter 6 is to produce a temporary area that contains a known-good set of tools that can be isolated from the host system. By using `chroot`, the commands in the remaining chapters will be contained within that environment, ensuring a clean, trouble-free build of the target LFS system. The build process has been designed to minimize the risks for new readers and to provide the most educational value at the same time.

The build process is based on the process of `cross-compilation`. Cross-compilation is normally used for building a compiler and its toolchain for a machine different from the one that is used for the build. This is not strictly needed for LFS, since the machine where the new system will run is the same as the one used for the build. But cross-compilation has the great advantage that anything that is cross-compiled cannot depend on the host environment.

About Cross-Compilation

Cross-compilation involves some concepts that deserve a section on their own. Although this section may be omitted in a first reading, it is strongly suggested to come back to it later in order to get a full grasp of the build process.

Let us first define some terms used in this context:

- **build**
  - is the machine where we build programs. Note that this machine is referred to as the “host” in other sections.

- **host**
  - is the machine/system where the built programs will run. Note that this use of “host” is not the same as in other sections.
target

is only used for compilers. It is the machine the compiler produces code for. It may be different from both build and host.

As an example, let us imagine the following scenario (sometimes referred to as “Canadian Cross”): we may have a compiler on a slow machine only, let's call the machine A, and the compiler ccA. We may have also a fast machine (B), but with no compiler, and we may want to produce code for another slow machine (C). To build a compiler for machine C, we would have three stages:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Build</th>
<th>Host</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>build cross-compiler cc1 using ccA on machine A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>build cross-compiler cc2 using cc1 on machine A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>build compiler ccC using cc2 on machine B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Then, all the other programs needed by machine C can be compiled using cc2 on the fast machine B. Note that unless B can run programs produced for C, there is no way to test the built programs until machine C itself is running. For example, for testing ccC, we may want to add a fourth stage:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Build</th>
<th>Host</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>rebuild and test ccC using itself on machine C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the example above, only cc1 and cc2 are cross-compilers, that is, they produce code for a machine different from the one they are run on. The other compilers ccA and ccC produce code for the machine they are run on. Such compilers are called native compilers.
Implementation of Cross-Compilation for LFS

Note

Almost all the build systems use names of the form cpu-vendor-kernel-os referred to as the machine triplet. An astute reader may wonder why a “triplet” refers to a four component name. The reason is history: initially, three component names were enough to designate unambiguously a machine, but with new machines and systems appearing, that proved insufficient. The word “triplet” remained. A simple way to determine your machine triplet is to run the `config.guess` script that comes with the source for many packages. Unpack the binutils sources and run the script: `./config.guess` and note the output. For example, for a 32-bit Intel processor the output will be `i686-pc-linux-gnu`. On a 64-bit system it will be `x86_64-pc-linux-gnu`.

Also be aware of the name of the platform's dynamic linker, often referred to as the dynamic loader (not to be confused with the standard linker `ld` that is part of binutils). The dynamic linker provided by Glibc finds and loads the shared libraries needed by a program, prepares the program to run, and then runs it. The name of the dynamic linker for a 32-bit Intel machine will be `ld-linux.so.2` (for 64-bit systems). A sure-fire way to determine the name of the dynamic linker is to inspect a random binary from the host system by running: `readelf -l <name of binary> | grep interpreter` and noting the output. The authoritative reference covering all platforms is in the `shlib-versions` file in the root of the Glibc source tree.

In order to fake a cross compilation, the name of the host triplet is slightly adjusted by changing the "vendor" field in the `LFS_TGT` variable. We also use the `--with-sysroot` option when building the cross linker and cross compiler to tell them where to find the needed host files. This ensures that none of the other programs built in Chapter 6 can link to libraries on the build machine. Only two stages are mandatory, and one more for tests:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Build</th>
<th>Host</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>pc</td>
<td>pc</td>
<td>lfs</td>
<td>build cross-compiler cc1 using cc-pc on pc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>pc</td>
<td>lfs</td>
<td>lfs</td>
<td>build compiler cc-lfs using cc1 on pc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>lfs</td>
<td>lfs</td>
<td>lfs</td>
<td>rebuild and test cc-lfs using itself on lfs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the above table, “on pc” means the commands are run on a machine using the already installed distribution. “On lfs” means the commands are run in a chrooted environment.
Now, there is more about cross-compiling: the C language is not just a compiler, but also defines a standard library. In this book, the GNU C library, named glibc, is used. This library must be compiled for the lfs machine, that is, using the cross compiler cc1. But the compiler itself uses an internal library implementing complex instructions not available in the assembler instruction set. This internal library is named libgcc, and must be linked to the glibc library to be fully functional! Furthermore, the standard library for C++ (libstdc++) also needs being linked to glibc. The solution to this chicken and egg problem is to first build a degraded cc1 based libgcc, lacking some functionalities such as threads and exception handling, then build glibc using this degraded compiler (glibc itself is not degraded), then build libstdc++. But this last library will lack the same functionalities as libgcc.

This is not the end of the story: the conclusion of the preceding paragraph is that cc1 is unable to build a fully functional libstdc++, but this is the only compiler available for building the C/C++ libraries during stage 2! Of course, the compiler built during stage 2, cc-lfs, would be able to build those libraries, but (1) the build system of GCC does not know that it is usable on pc, and (2) using it on pc would be at risk of linking to the pc libraries, since cc-lfs is a native compiler. So we have to build libstdc++ later, in chroot.

**Other procedural details**

The cross-compiler will be installed in a separate $LFS/tools directory, since it will not be part of the final system.

Binutils is installed first because the `configure` runs of both GCC and Glibc perform various feature tests on the assembler and linker to determine which software features to enable or disable. This is more important than one might first realize. An incorrectly configured GCC or Glibc can result in a subtly broken toolchain, where the impact of such breakage might not show up until near the end of the build of an entire distribution. A test suite failure will usually highlight this error before too much additional work is performed.

Binutils installs its assembler and linker in two locations, $LFS/tools/bin and $LFS/tools/$LFS_TGT/bin. The tools in one location are hard linked to the other. An important facet of the linker is its library search order. Detailed information can be obtained from `ld` by passing it the `--verbose` flag. For example, `$LFS_TGT-ld --verbose | grep SEARCH` will illustrate the current search paths and their order. It shows which files are linked by `ld` by compiling a dummy program and passing the `--verbose` switch to the linker. For example, `$LFS_TGT-gcc dummy.c -Wl,--verbose 2>&1 | grep succeeded` will show all the files successfully opened during the linking.

The next package installed is GCC. An example of what can be seen during its run of `configure` is:

```bash
checking what assembler to use... /mnt/lfs/tools/i686-lfs-linux-gnu/bin/as
checking what linker to use... /mnt/lfs/tools/i686-lfs-linux-gnu/bin/ld
```

This is important for the reasons mentioned above. It also demonstrates that GCC’s configure script does not search the PATH directories to find which tools to use. However, during the actual operation of `gcc` itself, the same search paths are not necessarily used. To find out which standard linker `gcc` will use, run: `$LFS_TGT-gcc -print-prog-name=ld`.

Detailed information can be obtained from `gcc` by passing it the `--v` command line option while compiling a dummy program. For example, `gcc -v dummy.c` will show detailed information about the preprocessor, compilation, and assembly stages, including `gcc`'s included search paths and their order.

Next installed are sanitized Linux API headers. These allow the standard C library (Glibc) to interface with features that the Linux kernel will provide.

The next package installed is Glibc. The most important considerations for building Glibc are the compiler, binary tools, and kernel headers. The compiler is generally not an issue since Glibc will always use the compiler relating to the `--host` parameter passed to its configure script; e.g. in our case, the compiler will be `$LFS_TGT-gcc`. The binary tools and kernel headers can be a bit more complicated. Therefore, take no risks and use the available configure switches to enforce the correct selections. After the run of `configure`, check the contents of the `config.make` file in the build
directory for all important details. Note the use of \texttt{CC="$LFS\_TGT\_gcc"} (with $LFS\_TGT$ expanded) to control which binary tools are used and the use of the \texttt{-nostdinc} and \texttt{-isystem} flags to control the compiler's include search path. These items highlight an important aspect of the Glibc package—it is very self-sufficient in terms of its build machinery and generally does not rely on toolchain defaults.

As said above, the standard C++ library is compiled next, followed in Chapter 6 by all the programs that need themselves to be built. The install step of all those packages uses the \texttt{DESTDIR} variable to have the programs land into the LFS filesystem.

At the end of Chapter 6 the native Lfs compiler is installed. First binutils-pass2 is built, with the same \texttt{DESTDIR} install as the other programs, then the second pass of GCC is constructed, omitting libstdc++ and other non-important libraries. Due to some weird logic in GCC's configure script, \texttt{CC\_FOR\_TARGET} ends up as \texttt{cc} when the host is the same as the target, but is different from the build system. This is why \texttt{CC\_FOR\_TARGET=$LFS\_TGT\_gcc} is put explicitly into the configure options.

Upon entering the chroot environment in Chapter 7, the first task is to install libstdc++. Then temporary installations of programs needed for the proper operation of the toolchain are performed. From this point onwards, the core toolchain is self-contained and self-hosted. In Chapter 8, final versions of all the packages needed for a fully functional system are built, tested and installed.

## General Compilation Instructions

When building packages there are several assumptions made within the instructions:

- Several of the packages are patched before compilation, but only when the patch is needed to circumvent a problem. A patch is often needed in both this and the following chapters, but sometimes in only one location. Therefore, do not be concerned if instructions for a downloaded patch seem to be missing. Warning messages about \texttt{offset} or \texttt{fuzz} may also be encountered when applying a patch. Do not worry about these warnings, as the patch was still successfully applied.

- During the compilation of most packages, there will be several warnings that scroll by on the screen. These are normal and can safely be ignored. These warnings are as they appear—warnings about deprecated, but not invalid, use of the C or C++ syntax. C standards change fairly often, and some packages still use the older standard. This is not a problem, but does prompt the warning.

- Check one last time that the \texttt{LFS} environment variable is set up properly:

  ```bash
  echo $LFS
  ```

  Make sure the output shows the path to the LFS partition's mount point, which is \texttt{/mnt/lfs}, using our example.

- Finally, two important items must be emphasized:
Important

To re-emphasize the build process:
1. Place all the sources and patches in a directory that will be accessible from the chroot environment such as /mnt/lfs/sources/.
2. Change to the sources directory.
3. For each package:
   a. Using the tar program, extract the package to be built. In Chapter 5 and Chapter 6, ensure you are the lfs user when extracting the package.
   b. Change to the directory created when the package was extracted.
   c. Follow the book's instructions for building the package.
   d. Change back to the sources directory.
   e. Delete the extracted source directory unless instructed otherwise.
Chapter 5. Compiling a Cross-Toolchain

5.1. Introduction

This chapter shows how to build a cross-compiler and its associated tools. Although here cross-compilation is faked, the principles are the same as for a real cross-toolchain.

The programs compiled in this chapter will be installed under the `$LFS/tools` directory to keep them separate from the files installed in the following chapters. The libraries, on the other hand, are installed into their final place, since they pertain to the system we want to build.
5.2. Binutils-2.36.1 - Pass 1

The Binutils package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files.

Approximate build time: 1 SBU
Required disk space: 640 MB

5.2.1. Installation of Cross Binutils

Note

Go back and re-read the notes in the section titled General Compilation Instructions. Understanding the notes labeled important can save you a lot of problems later.

It is important that Binutils be the first package compiled because both Glibc and GCC perform various tests on the available linker and assembler to determine which of their own features to enable.

The Binutils documentation recommends building Binutils in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v build
cd build
```

Note

In order for the SBU values listed in the rest of the book to be of any use, measure the time it takes to build this package from the configuration, up to and including the first install. To achieve this easily, wrap the commands in a `time` command like this: `time { ../configure ... && make && make install; }`.

Now prepare Binutils for compilation:

```
../configure --prefix=$LFS/tools
 --with-sysroot=$LFS
 --target=$LFS_TGT
 --disable-nls
 --disable-werror
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--prefix=$LFS/tools
 This tells the configure script to prepare to install the binutils programs in the $LFS/tools directory.

--with-sysroot=$LFS
 For cross compilation, this tells the build system to look in $LFS for the target system libraries as needed.

--target=$LFS_TGT
 Because the machine description in the LFS_TGT variable is slightly different than the value returned by the config.guess script, this switch will tell the configure script to adjust binutil's build system for building a cross linker.

--disable-nls
 This disables internationalization as i18n is not needed for the temporary tools.

--disable-werror
 This prevents the build from stopping in the event that there are warnings from the host's compiler.
```
Continue with compiling the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.18.2, “Contents of Binutils.”
5.3. GCC-10.2.0 - Pass 1

The GCC package contains the GNU compiler collection, which includes the C and C++ compilers.

Approximate build time: 11 SBU
Required disk space: 3.7 GB

5.3.1. Installation of Cross GCC

GCC requires the GMP, MPFR and MPC packages. As these packages may not be included in your host distribution, they will be built with GCC. Unpack each package into the GCC source directory and rename the resulting directories so the GCC build procedures will automatically use them:

Note

There are frequent misunderstandings about this chapter. The procedures are the same as every other chapter as explained earlier (Package build instructions). First extract the gcc tarball from the sources directory and then change to the directory created. Only then should you proceed with the instructions below.

```
tar -xf ../mpfr-4.1.0.tar.xz
mv -v mpfr-4.1.0 mpfr

mv -v gmp-6.2.1 gmp

tar -xf ../mpc-1.2.1.tar.gz
mv -v mpc-1.2.1 mpc
```

On x86_64 hosts, set the default directory name for 64-bit libraries to "lib":

```
case $(uname -m) in
  x86_64)
    sed -e '/m64=/s/lib64/lib/'
      -i.orig gcc/config/i386/t-linux64
  ;;
esac
```

The GCC documentation recommends building GCC in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v build
cd build
```
Prepare GCC for compilation:

```
./configure                                       
   --target=$LFS_TGT                              
   --prefix=$LFS/tools                            
   --with-glibc-version=2.11                      
   --with-sysroot=$LFS                            
   --with-newlib                                  
   --without-headers                              
   --enable-initfini-array                        
   --disable-nls                                  
   --disable-shared                               
   --disable-multilib                             
   --disable-decimal-float                        
   --disable-threads                              
   --disable-libatomic                            
   --disable-libgomp                              
   --disable-libquadmath                          
   --disable-libssp                               
   --disable-libvtv                               
   --disable-libstdcxx                            
   --enable-languages=c,c++                        
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```--with-glibc-version=2.11
This option ensures the package will be compatible with the host’s version of glibc. It is set to the minimum glibc requirement specified in the Host System Requirements.
```

```--with-newlib
Since a working C library is not yet available, this ensures that the inhibit_libc constant is defined when building libgcc. This prevents the compiling of any code that requires libc support.
```

```--without-headers
When creating a complete cross-compiler, GCC requires standard headers compatible with the target system. For our purposes these headers will not be needed. This switch prevents GCC from looking for them.
```

```--enable-initfini-array
This switch forces the use of some internal data structures that are needed but cannot be detected when building a cross compiler.
```

```--disable-shared
This switch forces GCC to link its internal libraries statically. We need this because the shared libraries require glibc, which is not yet installed on the target system.
```

```--disable-multilib
On x86_64, LFS does not support a multilib configuration. This switch is harmless for x86.
```

These switches disable support for the decimal floating point extension, threading, libatomic, libgomp, libquadmath, libssp, libvtv, and the C++ standard library respectively. These features will fail to compile when building a cross-compiler and are not necessary for the task of cross-compiling the temporary libc.
```
This option ensures that only the C and C++ compilers are built. These are the only languages needed now.

Compile GCC by running:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

This build of GCC has installed a couple of internal system headers. Normally one of them, `limits.h`, would in turn include the corresponding system `limits.h` header, in this case, `$LFS/usr/include/limits.h`. However, at the time of this build of GCC `$LFS/usr/include/limits.h` does not exist, so the internal header that has just been installed is a partial, self-contained file and does not include the extended features of the system header. This is adequate for building glibc, but the full internal header will be needed later. Create a full version of the internal header using a command that is identical to what the GCC build system does in normal circumstances:

```
cd ..
cat gcc/limitx.h gcc/glimits.h gcc/limity.h > `dirname `$(LFS_TGT-gcc -print-libgcc-file-name)`/install-tools/include/limits.h`
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.26.2, “Contents of GCC.”
5.4. Linux-5.10.17 API Headers

The Linux API Headers (in linux-5.10.17.tar.xz) expose the kernel’s API for use by Glibc.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 1.1 GB

5.4.1. Installation of Linux API Headers

The Linux kernel needs to expose an Application Programming Interface (API) for the system’s C library (Glibc in LFS) to use. This is done by way of sanitizing various C header files that are shipped in the Linux kernel source tarball.

Make sure there are no stale files embedded in the package:

```
make mrproper
```

Now extract the user-visible kernel headers from the source. The recommended make target “headers_install” cannot be used, because it requires rsync, which may not be available. The headers are first placed in ./usr, then copied to the needed location.

```
make headers
find usr/include -name '.*' -delete
rm usr/include/Makefile
cp -rv usr/include $LFS/usr
```

5.4.2. Contents of Linux API Headers

**Installed headers:**

- /usr/include/asm/*.h
- /usr/include/asm-generic/*.h
- /usr/include/drm/*.h
- /usr/include/linux/*.h
- /usr/include/misc/*.h
- /usr/include/mtd/*.h
- /usr/include/rdma/*.h
- /usr/include/scsi/*.h
- /usr/include/sound/*.h
- /usr/include/video/*.h
- /usr/include/xen/*.h

**Installed directories:**

- /usr/include/asm
- /usr/include/asm-generic
- /usr/include/drm
- /usr/include/linux
- /usr/include/misc
- /usr/include/mtd
- /usr/include/rdma
- /usr/include/scsi
- /usr/include/sound
- /usr/include/video
- /usr/include/xen

**Short Descriptions**

- `/usr/include/asm/*.h` The Linux API ASM Headers
- `/usr/include/asm-generic/*.h` The Linux API ASM Generic Headers
- `/usr/include/drm/*.h` The Linux API DRM Headers
- `/usr/include/linux/*.h` The Linux API Linux Headers
- `/usr/include/misc/*.h` The Linux API Miscellaneous Headers
- `/usr/include/mtd/*.h` The Linux API MTD Headers
- `/usr/include/rdma/*.h` The Linux API RDMA Headers
- `/usr/include/scsi/*.h` The Linux API SCSI Headers
- `/usr/include/sound/*.h` The Linux API Sound Headers
- `/usr/include/video/*.h` The Linux API Video Headers
- `/usr/include/xen/*.h` The Linux API Xen Headers
5.5. Glibc-2.33

The Glibc package contains the main C library. This library provides the basic routines for allocating memory, searching directories, opening and closing files, reading and writing files, string handling, pattern matching, arithmetic, and so on.

Approximate build time: 4.2 SBU
Required disk space: 770 MB

5.5.1. Installation of Glibc

First, create a symbolic link for LSB compliance. Additionally, for x86_64, create a compatibility symbolic link required for proper operation of the dynamic library loader:

```bash
case $(uname -m) in
  i?86)   ln -sfv ld-linux.so.2 $LFS/lib/ld-lsb.so.3
  ;;
  x86_64) ln -sfv ../lib/ld-linux-x86-64.so.2 $LFS/lib64
           ln -sfv ../lib/ld-linux-x86-64.so.2 $LFS/lib64/ld-lsb-x86-64.so.3
  ;;
esac
```

Some of the Glibc programs use the non-FHS compliant /var/db directory to store their runtime data. Apply the following patch to make such programs store their runtime data in the FHS-compliant locations:

```bash
patch -Np1 -i ../glibc-2.33-fhs-1.patch
```

The Glibc documentation recommends building Glibc in a dedicated build directory:

```bash
mkdir -v build
cd       build
```

Next, prepare Glibc for compilation:

```bash
./configure
   --prefix=/usr
   --host=$LFS_TGT
   --build=$(../scripts/config.guess)
   --enable-kernel=3.2
   --with-headers=$LFS/usr/include
   libc_cv_slibdir=/lib
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```bash
--host=$LFS_TGT, --build=$(../scripts/config.guess)
```

The combined effect of these switches is that Glibc's build system configures itself to be cross-compiled, using the cross-linker and cross-compiler in $LFS/tools.

```bash
--enable-kernel=3.2
```

This tells Glibc to compile the library with support for 3.2 and later Linux kernels. Workarounds for older kernels are not enabled.
This tells Glibc to compile itself against the headers recently installed to the $LFS/usr/include directory, so that it knows exactly what features the kernel has and can optimize itself accordingly.

`libc_cv_slibdir=/lib`

This ensures that the library is installed in /lib instead of the default /lib64 on 64 bit machines.

`libc_cv_include_x86_isa_level=no`

This disables “x86 ISA needed” property in Glibc libraries. Use it if you are building Glibc with `-march` option in `CFLAGS`, to workaround an issue in Glibc-2.33 breaking it.

During this stage the following warning might appear:

```
configure: WARNING:
*** These auxiliary programs are missing or
*** incompatible versions: msgfmt
*** some features will be disabled.
*** Check the INSTALL file for required versions.
```

The missing or incompatible `msgfmt` program is generally harmless. This `msgfmt` program is part of the Gettext package which the host distribution should provide.

**Note**

There have been reports that this package may fail when building as a "parallel make". If this occurs, rerun the make command with a "-j1" option.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

**Warning**

If $LFS is not properly set, and despite the recommendations, you are building as `root`, the next command will install the newly built glibc to your host system, which most likely will render it unusable. So double check that the environment is correctly set, before running the following command.

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

The meaning of the make install option:

`DESTDIR=$LFS`

The `DESTDIR` make variable is used by almost all packages to define the location where the package should be installed. If it is not set, it defaults to the root (/) directory. Here we specify that the package be installed in `$LFS`, which will become the root after Section 7.4, “Entering the Chroot Environment”.
Caution

At this point, it is imperative to stop and ensure that the basic functions (compiling and linking) of the new toolchain are working as expected. To perform a sanity check, run the following commands:

```
echo 'int main(){}' > dummy.c
$LFS_TGT-gcc dummy.c
readelf -l a.out | grep '/ld-linux'
```

If everything is working correctly, there should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be of the form:

```
[Requesting program interpreter: /lib64/ld-linux-x86-64.so.2]
```

Note that for 32-bit machines, the interpreter name will be `/lib/ld-linux.so.2`.

If the output is not shown as above or there was no output at all, then something is wrong. Investigate and retrace the steps to find out where the problem is and correct it. This issue must be resolved before continuing on.

Once all is well, clean up the test files:

```
rm -v dummy.c a.out
```

Note

Building packages in the next chapter will serve as an additional check that the toolchain has been built properly. If some package, especially binutils-pass2 or gcc-pass2, fails to build, it is an indication that something has gone wrong with the previous Binutils, GCC, or Glibc installations.

Now that our cross-toolchain is complete, finalize the installation of the limits.h header. For doing so, run a utility provided by the GCC developers:

```
$LFS/tools/libexec/gcc/$LFS_TGT/10.2.0/install-tools/mkheaders
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.5.3, “Contents of Glibc.”
5.6. Libstdc++ from GCC-10.2.0, Pass 1

Libstdc++ is the standard C++ library. It is needed to compile C++ code (part of GCC is written in C++), but we had to defer its installation when we built gcc-pass1 because it depends on glibc, which was not yet available in the target directory.

Approximate build time: 0.4 SBU
Required disk space: 953 MB

5.6.1. Installation of Target Libstdc++

Note

Libstdc++ is part of the GCC sources. You should first unpack the GCC tarball and change to the gcc-10.2.0 directory.

Create a separate build directory for libstdc++ and enter it:

```bash
mkdir -v build
cd build
```

Prepare libstdc++ for compilation:

```bash
./libstdc++-v3/configure
  --host=$LFS_TGT
  --build=$(./config.guess)
  --prefix=/usr
  --disable-multilib
  --disable-nls
  --disable-libstdcxx-pch
  --with-gxx-include-dir=/tools/$LFS_TGT/include/c++/10.2.0
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```bash
--host=...
  Specifies the use the cross compiler we have just built instead of the one in /usr/bin.
--disable-libstdcxx-pch
  This switch prevents the installation of precompiled include files, which are not needed at this stage.
--with-gxx-include-dir=/tools/$LFS_TGT/include/c++/10.2.0
  This is the location where the C++ compiler should search for the standard include files. In a normal build, this information is automatically passed to the libstdc++ configure options from the top level directory. In our case, this information must be explicitly given.
```

Compile libstdc++ by running:

```bash
make
```

Install the library:

```bash
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.26.2, “Contents of GCC.”

52
Chapter 6. Cross Compiling Temporary Tools

6.1. Introduction

This chapter shows how to cross-compile basic utilities using the just built cross-toolchain. Those utilities are installed into their final location, but cannot be used yet. Basic tasks still rely on the host's tools. Nevertheless, the installed libraries are used when linking.

Using the utilities will be possible in next chapter after entering the “chroot” environment. But all the packages built in the present chapter need to be built before we do that. Therefore we cannot be independent of the host system yet.

Once again, let us recall that improper setting of LFS together with building as root, may render your computer unusable. This whole chapter must be done as user lfs, with the environment as described in Section 4.4, “Setting Up the Environment”.
6.2. M4-1.4.18

The M4 package contains a macro processor.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 22 MB

6.2.1. Installation of M4

First, make some fixes introduced by glibc-2.28:

```
sed -i 's/IO_ftrylockfile/IO_EOF_SEEN/' lib/*.c
echo "#define _IO_IN_BACKUP 0x100" >> lib/stdio-impl.h
```

Prepare M4 for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr   
   --host=$LFS_TGT   
   --build=$(build-aux/config.guess)
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.12.2, “Contents of M4.”
6.3. Ncurses-6.2

The Ncurses package contains libraries for terminal-independent handling of character screens.

**Approximate build time:** 0.7 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 48 MB

6.3.1. Installation of Ncurses

First, ensure that `gawk` is found first during configuration:

```bash
sed -i s/mawk// configure
```

Then, run the following commands to build the “tic” program on the build host:

```bash
mkdir build  
pushd build  
../configure  
make -C include  
make -C progs tic  
popd
```

Prepare Ncurses for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr             \  
--host=$LFS_TGT                         \  
--build=$(/config.guess)               \  
--mandir=/usr/share/man                 \  
--with-manpage-format=normal            \  
--with-shared                          \  
--without-debug                        \  
--without-ada                          \  
--without-normal                       \  
--enable-widec
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

`--with-manpage-format=normal`
This prevents Ncurses installing compressed manual pages, which may happen if the host distribution itself has compressed manual pages.

`--without-ada`
This ensures that Ncurses does not build support for the Ada compiler which may be present on the host but will not be available once we enter the `chroot` environment.

`--enable-widec`
This switch causes wide-character libraries (e.g., `libncursesw.so.6.2`) to be built instead of normal ones (e.g., `libncurses.so.6.2`). These wide-character libraries are usable in both multibyte and traditional 8-bit locales, while normal libraries work properly only in 8-bit locales. Wide-character and normal libraries are source-compatible, but not binary-compatible.

`--without-normal`
This switch disables building and installing most static libraries.
Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS TIC_PATH=$(pwd)/build/progs/tic install
echo "INPUT(-lncursesw)" > $LFS/usr/lib/libncurses.so
```

The meaning of the install options:

```
TIC_PATH=$(pwd)/build/progs/tic
```

We need to pass the path of the just built tic able to run on the building machine, so that the terminal database can be created without errors.

```
echo "INPUT(-lncursesw)" > $LFS/usr/lib/libncurses.so
```

The libncurses.so library is needed by a few packages we will build soon. We create this small linker script, as this is what is done in Chapter 8.

Move the shared libraries to the /lib directory, where they are expected to reside:

```
mv -v $LFS/usr/lib/libncursesw.so.6* $LFS/lib
```

Because the libraries have been moved, one symlink points to a non-existent file. Recreate it:

```
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink $LFS/usr/lib/libncursesw.so) $LFS/usr/lib/libncursesw.so
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.28.2, “Contents of Ncurses.”
6.4. Bash-5.1

The Bash package contains the Bourne-Again SHell.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 66 MB

### 6.4.1. Installation of Bash

Prepare Bash for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr                   
  --build=$(support/config.guess)          
  --host=$LFS_TGT                          
  --without-bash-malloc
```

The meaning of the configure options:

- `--without-bash-malloc`
  - This option turns off the use of Bash's memory allocation (malloc) function which is known to cause segmentation faults. By turning this option off, Bash will use the `malloc` functions from Glibc which are more stable.

Compile the package:

`make`

Install the package:

`make DESTDIR=$LFS install`

Move the executable to where it is expected:

`mv $LFS/usr/bin/bash $LFS/bin/bash`

Make a link for the programs that use `sh` for a shell:

`ln -sv bash $LFS/bin/sh`

Details on this package are located in Section 8.34.2, “Contents of Bash.”
6.5. Coreutils-8.32

The Coreutils package contains utilities for showing and setting the basic system characteristics.

Approximate build time: 0.5 SBU
Required disk space: 170 MB

6.5.1. Installation of Coreutils

Prepare Coreutils for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr                     \
    --host=$LFS_TGT                   \
    --build=$(build-aux/config.guess) \ 
    --enable-install-program=hostname \
    --enable-no-install-program=kill,uptime
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```bash
--enable-install-program=hostname
```
This enables the `hostname` binary to be built and installed – it is disabled by default but is required by the Perl test suite.

Compile the package:

```bash
make
```

Install the package:

```bash
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Move programs to their final expected locations. Although this is not necessary in this temporary environment, we must do so because some programs hardcode executable locations:

```bash
mv -v $LFS/usr/bin/{cat, chgrp, chmod, chown, cp, date, dd, df, echo} $LFS/bin
mv -v $LFS/usr/bin/{false, ln, ls, mkdir, mknod, mv, pwd, rm} $LFS/bin
mv -v $LFS/usr/bin/{rmdir, stty, sync, true, uname} $LFS/bin
mv -v $LFS/usr/bin/{head, nice, sleep, touch} $LFS/bin
mv -v $LFS/usr/bin/chroot $LFS/usr/sbin
mkdir -pv $LFS/usr/share/man/man8
mv -v $LFS/usr/share/man/man1/chroot.1 $LFS/usr/share/man/man8
sed -i 's/"1"/"8"/' $LFS/usr/share/man/man8/chroot.8
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.52.2, “Contents of Coreutils.”
6.6. Diffutils-3.7

The Diffutils package contains programs that show the differences between files or directories.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 26 MB

6.6.1. Installation of Diffutils

Prepare Diffutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --host=$LFS_TGT
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.54.2, “Contents of Diffutils.”
6.7. File-5.39

The File package contains a utility for determining the type of a given file or files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 31 MB

6.7.1. Installation of File

The `file` command on the build host needs to be same version as the one we are building in order to create the signature file. Run the following commands to build it:

```
mkdir build
pushd build

./configure --disable-bzlib \  
--disable-libseccomp \  
--disable-xzlib \  
--disable-zlib

make

popd
```

The meaning of the new `configure` option:

```
--disable-*
```

The configuration script attempts to use some packages from the host distribution if the corresponding library files exist. It may cause compilation failure if a library file exists, but the corresponding header files do not. These options prevent using these unneeded capabilities from the host.

Prepare File for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --host=$LFS_TGT --build=$(./config.guess)
```

Compile the package:

```
make FILE_COMPILE=$(pwd)/build/src/file
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.10.2, “Contents of File.”
6.8. Findutils-4.8.0

The Findutils package contains programs to find files. These programs are provided to recursively search through a directory tree and to create, maintain, and search a database (often faster than the recursive find, but is unreliable if the database has not been recently updated).

Approximate build time: 0.2 SBU
Required disk space: 42 MB

6.8.1. Installation of Findutils

Prepare Findutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr  \
        --host=$LFS_TGT  \
        --build=$(build-aux/config.guess)
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Move the executable to its final expected location:

```
mv -v $LFS/usr/bin/find $LFS/bin
```

```
$ sed -i 's|find:=${BINDIR}|find:=$LFS/bin|' $LFS/usr/bin/updatedb
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.56.2, “Contents of Findutils.”
6.9. Gawk-5.1.0

The Gawk package contains programs for manipulating text files.

Approximate build time: 0.2 SBU
Required disk space: 46 MB

6.9.1. Installation of Gawk

First, ensure some unneeded files are not installed:

```
sed -i 's/extras//' Makefile.in
```

Prepare Gawk for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \ 
  --host=$LFS_TGT \ 
  --build=$(./config.guess)
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.55.2, “Contents of Gawk.”
6.10. Grep-3.6

The Grep package contains programs for searching through the contents of files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU
**Required disk space:** 26 MB

6.10.1. Installation of Grep

Prepare Grep for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr   \ 
  --host=$LFS_TGT \ 
  --bindir=/bin
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.33.2, “Contents of Grep.”
6.11. Gzip-1.10

The Gzip package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 10 MB

6.11.1. Installation of Gzip

Prepare Gzip for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --host=$LFS_TGT
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Move the executable to its final expected location:

```
mv -v $LFS/usr/bin/gzip $LFS/bin
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.60.2, “Contents of Gzip.”
6.12. Make-4.3

The Make package contains a program for controlling the generation of executables and other non-source files of a package from source files.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 16 MB

6.12.1. Installation of Make

Prepare Make for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr   
  --without-guile 
  --host=$LFS_TGT 
  --build=$(build-aux/config.guess)
```

The meaning of the new configure option:

`--without-guile`

Although we are cross-compiling, configure tries to use guile from the build host if it finds it. This makes compilation fail, so this switch prevents using it.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.64.2, “Contents of Make.”
6.13. Patch-2.7.6

The Patch package contains a program for modifying or creating files by applying a “patch” file typically created by the `diff` program.

- **Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU
- **Required disk space:** 13 MB

### 6.13.1. Installation of Patch

Prepare Patch for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr   \
   --host=$LFS_TGT   \
   --build=$(build-aux/config.guess)
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.65.2, “Contents of Patch.”
6.14. Sed-4.8

The Sed package contains a stream editor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 21 MB

6.14.1. Installation of Sed

Prepare Sed for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr \  
  --host=$LFS_TGT \  
  --bindir=/bin
```

Compile the package:

```bash
make
```

Install the package:

```bash
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.29.2, “Contents of Sed.”
6.15. Tar-1.34

The Tar package provides the ability to create tar archives as well as perform various other kinds of archive manipulation. Tar can be used on previously created archives to extract files, to store additional files, or to update or list files which were already stored.

 Approximate build time: 0.2 SBU
 Required disk space: 40 MB

6.15.1. Installation of Tar

Prepare Tar for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \  
 --host=$LFS_TGT \  
 --build=$(build-aux/config.guess) \  
 --bindir=/bin
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.67.2, “Contents of Tar.”
The Xz package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It provides capabilities for the lzma and the newer xz compression formats. Compressing text files with xz yields a better compression percentage than with the traditional gzip or bzip2 commands.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 16 MB

### 6.16.1. Installation of Xz

Prepare Xz for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr                     \
   --host=$LFS_TGT                                \
   --build=$(build-aux/config.guess)            \
   --disable-static                              \
   --docdir=/usr/share/doc/xz-5.2.5
```

Compile the package:

```
maker
```

Install the package:

```
maker DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

Make sure that all essential files are in the correct directory:

```
mv -v $LFS/usr/bin/{lzma,unlzma,lzcat,xz,unxz,xzcat}   $LFS/bin
mv -v $LFS/usr/lib/liblzma.so.*                      $LFS/lib
ln -svf ../../lib/$(readlink $LFS/usr/lib/liblzma.so)  $LFS/usr/lib/liblzma.so
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.8.2, “Contents of Xz.”
6.17. Binutils-2.36.1 - Pass 2

The Binutils package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files.

**Approximate build time:** 1.3 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 517 MB

### 6.17.1. Installation of Binutils

Create a separate build directory again:

```bash
mkdir -v build
cd build
```

Prepare Binutils for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr              --build=$(../config.guess) --host=$LFS_TGT              --disable-nls              --enable-shared              --disable-werror              --enable-64-bit-bfd
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

```bash
--enable-shared
Builds libbfd as a shared library.

--enable-64-bit-bfd
Enables 64-bit support (on hosts with narrower word sizes). May not be needed on 64-bit systems, but does no harm.
```

Compile the package:

```bash
make
```

Install the package, and workaround an issue causing `libctf.so` to link against zlib from the host distribution:

```bash
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
install -vm755 libctf/.libs/libctf.so.0.0.0 $LFS/usr/lib
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.18.2, “Contents of Binutils.”
6.18. GCC-10.2.0 - Pass 2

The GCC package contains the GNU compiler collection, which includes the C and C++ compilers.

**Approximate build time:** 11 SBU
**Required disk space:** 3.7 GB

### 6.18.1. Installation of GCC

As in the first build of GCC, the GMP, MPFR, and MPC packages are required. Unpack the tarballs and move them into the required directory names:

```
tar -xf ../mpfr-4.1.0.tar.xz
mv -v mpfr-4.1.0 mpfr

tar -xf ../gmp-6.2.1.tar.xz
mv -v gmp-6.2.1 gmp

tar -xf ../mpc-1.2.1.tar.gz
mv -v mpc-1.2.1 mpc
```

If building on x86_64, change the default directory name for 64-bit libraries to “lib”:

```
case $(uname -m) in
  x86_64)
    sed -e '/m64=/s/lib64/lib/' -i.orig gcc/config/i386/t-linux64
  ;;
  esac
```

Create a separate build directory again:

```
mkdir -v build
cd build
```

Create a symlink that allows libgcc to be built with posix threads support:

```
mkdir -pv $LFS_TGT/libgcc
ln -s ../../libgcc/gthr-posix.h $LFS_TGT/libgcc/gthr-default.h
```

Before starting to build GCC, remember to unset any environment variables that override the default optimization flags.
Now prepare GCC for compilation:

```bash
..//configure
   --build=$(../config.guess)  
   --host=$LFS_TGT            
   --prefix=/usr              
   CC_FOR_TARGET=$LFS_TGT-gcc 
   --with-build-sysroot=$LFS 
   --enable-initfini-array    
   --disable-nls              
   --disable-multilib        
   --disable-decimal-float   
   --disable-libatomic       
   --disable-libgomp         
   --disable-libquadmath     
   --disable-libssp          
   --disable-libvtv          
   --disable-libstdc++       
   --enable-languages=c,c++
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

```bash
--with-build-sysroot=$LFS
```

Normally, using `--host` ensures that a cross-compiler is used for building GCC, and that compiler knows that it has to look for headers and libraries in `$LFS`. But the build system of GCC uses other tools, which are not aware of this location. This switch is needed to have them find the needed files in `$LFS`, and not on the host.

```bash
--enable-initfini-array
```

This option is automatically enabled when building a native compiler with a native compiler on x86. But here, we build with a cross compiler, so we need to explicitly set this option.

Compile the package:

```bash
make
```

Install the package:

```bash
make DESTDIR=$LFS install
```

As a finishing touch, create a utility symlink. Many programs and scripts run `cc` instead of `gcc`, which is used to keep programs generic and therefore usable on all kinds of UNIX systems where the GNU C compiler is not always installed. Running `cc` leaves the system administrator free to decide which C compiler to install:

```bash
ln -sv gcc $LFS/usr/bin/cc
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.26.2, “Contents of GCC.”
Chapter 7. Entering Chroot and Building Additional Temporary Tools

7.1. Introduction

This chapter shows how to build the last missing bits of the temporary system: first, the tools needed by the build machinery of various packages, then three packages needed to run tests. Now that all circular dependencies have been resolved, we can use a “chroot” environment, completely isolated the host operating system used for the build, except for the running kernel.

For proper operation of the isolated environment, some communication with the running kernel must be established. This is done through the so-called Virtual Kernel File Systems, which must be mounted when entering the chroot environment. You may want to check that they are mounted by issuing findmnt.

Until Section 7.4, “Entering the Chroot Environment”, the commands must be run as root, with the LFS variable set. After entering chroot, all commands are run as root, fortunately without access to the OS of the computer you built LFS on. Be careful anyway, as it is easy to destroy the whole LFS system with badly formed commands.

7.2. Changing Ownership

Note

The commands in the remainder of this book must be performed while logged in as user root and no longer as user lfs. Also, double check that $LFS is set in root's environment.

Currently, the whole directory hierarchy in $LFS is owned by the user lfs, a user that exists only on the host system. If the directories and files under $LFS are kept as they are, they will be owned by a user ID without a corresponding account. This is dangerous because a user account created later could get this same user ID and would own all the files under $LFS, thus exposing these files to possible malicious manipulation.

To address this issue, change the ownership of the $LFS/* directories to user root by running the following command:

```bash
chown -R root:root $LFS/{usr,lib,var,etc,bin,sbin,tools}
case $(uname -m) in
  x86_64) chown -R root:root $LFS/lib64 ;;
esac
```

7.3. Preparing Virtual Kernel File Systems

Various file systems exported by the kernel are used to communicate to and from the kernel itself. These file systems are virtual in that no disk space is used for them. The content of the file systems resides in memory.

Begin by creating directories onto which the file systems will be mounted:

```bash
mkdir -pv $LFS/{dev,proc,sys,run}
```
7.3.1. Creating Initial Device Nodes

When the kernel boots the system, it requires the presence of a few device nodes, in particular the console and null devices. The device nodes must be created on the hard disk so that they are available before the kernel populates /dev, and additionally when Linux is started with init=/bin/bash. Create the devices by running the following commands:

```
mknod -m 600 $LFS/dev/console c 5 1
mknod -m 666 $LFS/dev/null c 1 3
```

7.3.2. Mounting and Populating /dev

The recommended method of populating the /dev directory with devices is to mount a virtual filesystem (such as tmpfs) on the /dev directory, and allow the devices to be created dynamically on that virtual filesystem as they are detected or accessed. Device creation is generally done during the boot process by Udev. Since this new system does not yet have Udev and has not yet been booted, it is necessary to mount and populate /dev manually. This is accomplished by bind mounting the host system's /dev directory. A bind mount is a special type of mount that allows you to create a mirror of a directory or mount point to some other location. Use the following command to achieve this:

```
mount -v --bind /dev $LFS/dev
```

7.3.3. Mounting Virtual Kernel File Systems

Now mount the remaining virtual kernel filesystems:

```
mount -v --bind /dev/pts $LFS/dev/pts
mount -vt proc proc $LFS/proc
mount -vt sysfs sysfs $LFS/sys
mount -vt tmpfs tmpfs $LFS/run
```

In some host systems, /dev/shm is a symbolic link to /run/shm. The /run tmpfs was mounted above so in this case only a directory needs to be created.

```
if [ -h $LFS/dev/shm ]; then
    mkdir -pv $LFS/$(readlink $LFS/dev/shm)
fi
```

7.4. Entering the Chroot Environment

Now that all the packages which are required to build the rest of the needed tools are on the system, it is time to enter the chroot environment to finish installing the remaining temporary tools. This environment will be in use also for installing the final system. As user root, run the following command to enter the environment that is, at the moment, populated with only the temporary tools:

```
chroot "$LFS" /usr/bin/env -i   \
    HOME=/root \n    TERM="$TERM" \n    PS1=('(lfs chroot) \u:\w$ ' \n    PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/usr/sbin \n    /bin/bash --login +h
```
The `-i` option given to the `env` command will clear all variables of the chroot environment. After that, only the `HOME`, `TERM`, `PS1`, and `PATH` variables are set again. The `TERM=$TERM` construct will set the `TERM` variable inside chroot to the same value as outside chroot. This variable is needed for programs like `vim` and `less` to operate properly. If other variables are desired, such as `CFLAGS` or `CXXFLAGS`, this is a good place to set them again.

From this point on, there is no need to use the `LFS` variable anymore because all work will be restricted to the LFS file system. This is because the Bash shell is told that `$LFS` is now the root (`/`) directory.

Notice that `/tools/bin` is not in the `PATH`. This means that the cross toolchain will no longer be used in the chroot environment. This occurs when the shell does not “remember” the locations of executed binaries—for this reason, hashing is switched off by passing the `+h` option to `bash`.

Note that the `bash` prompt will say `I have no name!` This is normal because the `/etc/passwd` file has not been created yet.

**Note**

It is important that all the commands throughout the remainder of this chapter and the following chapters are run from within the chroot environment. If you leave this environment for any reason (rebooting for example), ensure that the virtual kernel filesystems are mounted as explained in Section 7.3.2, “Mounting and Populating /dev” and Section 7.3.3, “Mounting Virtual Kernel File Systems” and enter chroot again before continuing with the installation.

### 7.5. Creating Directories

It is time to create the full structure in the LFS file system.

Create some root-level directories that are not in the limited set required in the previous chapters by issuing the following command:

```
mkdir -pv /{boot,home,mnt,opt,srv}
```
Create the required set of subdirectories below the root-level by issuing the following commands:

```
mkdir -pv /etc/{opt,sysconfig}
mkdir -pv /lib/firmware
mkdir -pv /media/{floppy,cdrom}
mkdir -pv /usr/{,local/}{bin,include,lib,sbin,src}
mkdir -pv /usr/{,local/}share/{color,dict,doc,info,locale,man}
mkdir -pv /usr/{,local/}share/{misc,terminfo,zoneinfo}
mkdir -pv /usr/{,local/}share/man/man{1..8}
mkdir -pv /var/{cache,local,log,mail,opt,spool}
mkdir -pv /var/lib/{color,misc,locate}

ln -sfv /run /var/run
ln -sfv /run/lock /var/lock
install -dv -m 0750 /root
install -dv -m 1777 /tmp /var/tmp
```

Directories are, by default, created with permission mode 755, but this is not desirable for all directories. In the commands above, two changes are made—one to the home directory of user root, and another to the directories for temporary files.

The first mode change ensures that not just anybody can enter the /root directory—the same as a normal user would do with his or her home directory. The second mode change makes sure that any user can write to the /tmp and /var/tmp directories, but cannot remove another user's files from them. The latter is prohibited by the so-called “sticky bit,” the highest bit (1) in the 1777 bit mask.

### 7.5.1. FHS Compliance Note

The directory tree is based on the Filesystem Hierarchy Standard (FHS) (available at https://refspecs.linuxfoundation.org/fhs.shtml). The FHS also specifies the optional existence of some directories such as /usr/local/games and /usr/share/games. We create only the directories that are needed. However, feel free to create these directories.

### 7.6. Creating Essential Files and Symlinks

Historically, Linux maintains a list of the mounted file systems in the file /etc/mtab. Modern kernels maintain this list internally and exposes it to the user via the /proc filesystem. To satisfy utilities that expect the presence of /etc/mtab, create the following symbolic link:

```
ln -sv /proc/self/mounts /etc/mtab
```

Create a basic /etc/hosts file to be referenced in some test suites, and in one of Perl's configuration files as well:

```
echo "127.0.0.1 localhost $(hostname)" > /etc/hosts
```

In order for user root to be able to login and for the name “root” to be recognized, there must be relevant entries in the /etc/passwd and /etc/group files.
Create the /etc/passwd file by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/passwd << "EOF"
root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/bash
bin:x:1:1:bin:/dev/null:/bin/false
daemon:x:6:6:Daemon User:/dev/null:/bin/false
messagebus:x:18:18:D-Bus Message Daemon User:/run/dbus:/bin/false
systemd-bus-proxy:x:72:72:systemd Bus Proxy:/bin/false
systemd-journal-gateway:x:73:73:systemd Journal Gateway:/bin/false
systemd-journal-upload:x:75:75:systemd Journal Upload:/bin/false
systemd-network:x:76:76:systemd Network Management:/bin/false
systemd-resolve:x:77:77:systemd Resolver:/bin/false
systemd-timesync:x:78:78:systemd Time Synchronization:/bin/false
systemd-coredump:x:79:79:systemd Core Dumper:/bin/false
uuidd:x:80:80:UUID Generation Daemon User:/dev/null:/bin/false
nobody:x:99:99:Unprivileged User:/dev/null:/bin/false
EOF
```

The actual password for root will be set later.
Create the `/etc/group` file by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/group << "EOF"
root:x:0:
bin:x:1:daemon
sys:x:2:
kmem:x:3:
tape:x:4:
tty:x:5:
daemon:x:6:
floppy:x:7:
disk:x:8:
lp:x:9:
dialout:x:10:
audio:x:11:
video:x:12:
utmp:x:13:
usb:x:14:
cdrom:x:15:
adm:x:16:
messagebus:x:18:
systemd-journal:x:23:
input:x:24:
mail:x:34:
kvm:x:61:
systemd-bus-proxy:x:72:
systemd-journal-gateway:x:73:
systemd-journal-remote:x:74:
systemd-journal-upload:x:75:
systemd-network:x:76:
systemd-resolve:x:77:
systemd-timesync:x:78:
systemd-coredump:x:79:
uuuid:x:80:
wheel:x:97:
nogroup:x:99:
users:x:999:
EOF
```

The created groups are not part of any standard—they are groups decided on in part by the requirements of the Udev configuration in Chapter 9, and in part by common convention employed by a number of existing Linux distributions. In addition, some test suites rely on specific users or groups. The Linux Standard Base (LSB, available at [http://refspecs.linuxfoundation.org/lsb.shtml](http://refspecs.linuxfoundation.org/lsb.shtml)) only recommends that, besides the group `root` with a Group ID (GID) of 0, a group `bin` with a GID of 1 be present. All other group names and GIDs can be chosen freely by the system administrator since well-written programs do not depend on GID numbers, but rather use the group’s name.
Some tests in Chapter 8 need a regular user. We add this user here and delete this account at the end of that chapter.

```
echo "tester:x:$(ls -n $(tty) | cut -d " -f3):101::/home/tester:/bin/bash" >> /etc/passwd
echo "tester:x:101:" >> /etc/group
install -o tester -d /home/tester
```

To remove the “I have no name!” prompt, start a new shell. Since the /etc/passwd and /etc/group files have been created, user name and group name resolution will now work:

```
exec /bin/bash --login +h
```

Note the use of the +h directive. This tells bash not to use its internal path hashing. Without this directive, bash would remember the paths to binaries it has executed. To ensure the use of the newly compiled binaries as soon as they are installed, the +h directive will be used for the duration of this and the next chapter.

The login, getty, and init programs (and others) use a number of log files to record information such as who was logged into the system and when. However, these programs will not write to the log files if they do not already exist. Initialize the log files and give them proper permissions:

```
touch /var/log/{btmp,lastlog,faillog,wtmp}
chgrp -v utmp /var/log/lastlog
chmod -v 664 /var/log/lastlog
chmod -v 600 /var/log/btmp
```

The /var/log/wtmp file records all logins and logouts. The /var/log/lastlog file records when each user last logged in. The /var/log/faillog file records failed login attempts. The /var/log/btmp file records the bad login attempts.

**Note**

The /run/utmp file records the users that are currently logged in. This file is created dynamically in the boot scripts.
7.7. Libstdc++ from GCC-10.2.0, Pass 2

When building gcc-pass2 we had to defer the installation of the C++ standard library because no suitable compiler was available to compile it. We could not use the compiler built in that section because it is a native compiler and should not be used outside of chroot and risks polluting the libraries with some host components.

Approximate build time: 0.8 SBU  
Required disk space: 1.1 GB

7.7.1. Installation of Target Libstdc++

Note
Libstdc++ is part of the GCC sources. You should first unpack the GCC tarball and change to the gcc-10.2.0 directory.

Create a link which exists when building libstdc++ in the gcc tree:

```
ln -s gthr-posix.h libgcc/gthr-default.h
```

Create a separate build directory for libstdc++ and enter it:

```
mkdir -v build
cd build
```

Prepare libstdc++ for compilation:

```
../libstdc++-v3/configure \ 
   CXXFLAGS="-g -O2 -D_GNU_SOURCE" \ 
   --prefix=/usr \ 
   --disable-multilib \ 
   --disable-nls \ 
   --host=$(uname -m)-lfs-linux-gnu \ 
   --disable-libstdcxx-pch
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
CXXFLAGS="-g -O2 -D_GNU_SOURCE"
```
These flags are passed by the top level Makefile when doing a full build of GCC.

```
--host=$(uname -m)-lfs-linux-gnu
```
We have to mimic what would happen if this package were built as part of a full compiler build. This switch would be passed to configure by GCC's build machinery.

```
--disable-libstdcxx-pch
```
This switch prevents the installation of precompiled include files, which are not needed at this stage.

Compile libstdc++ by running:

```
made
```

Install the library:

```
made install
```
Details on this package are located in Section 8.26.2, “Contents of GCC.”
7.8. Gettext-0.21

The Gettext package contains utilities for internationalization and localization. These allow programs to be compiled with NLS (Native Language Support), enabling them to output messages in the user's native language.

Approximate build time: 1.8 SBU
Required disk space: 310 MB

7.8.1. Installation of Gettext

For our temporary set of tools, we only need to install three programs from Gettext.

Prepare Gettext for compilation:

```
./configure --disable-shared
```

The meaning of the configure option:

```
--disable-shared
```

We do not need to install any of the shared Gettext libraries at this time, therefore there is no need to build them.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the `msgfmt`, `msgmerge`, and `xgettext` programs:

```
cp -v gettext-tools/src/{msgfmt,msgmerge,xgettext} /usr/bin
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.31.2, “Contents of Gettext.”
7.9. Bison-3.7.5

The Bison package contains a parser generator.

**Approximate build time:** 0.3 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 52 MB

7.9.1. Installation of Bison

Prepare Bison for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr \  
--docdir=/usr/share/doc/bison-3.7.5
```

The meaning of the new configure option:

```
--docdir=/usr/share/doc/bison-3.7.5
```

This tells the build system to install bison documentation into a versioned directory.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.32.2, “Contents of Bison.”
7.10. Perl-5.32.1

The Perl package contains the Practical Extraction and Report Language.

Approximate build time: 1.7 SBU
Required disk space: 268 MB

7.10.1. Installation of Perl

Prepare Perl for compilation:

```
sh Configure -des                                          
   -Dprefix=/usr                                   
   -Dvendorprefix=/usr                           
   -Dprivlib=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/core_perl       
   -Darchlib=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/core_perl       
   -Dsitelib=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/site_perl      
   -Dsitearch=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/site_perl     
   -Dvendorlib=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/vendor_perl  
   -Dvendorarch=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/vendor_perl
```

The meaning of the new Configure options:

  -des
  This is a combination of three options: -d uses defaults for all items; -e ensures completion of all tasks; -s silences non-essential output.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.40.2, “Contents of Perl.”
The Python 3 package contains the Python development environment. It is useful for object-oriented programming, writing scripts, prototyping large programs, or developing entire applications.

**Approximate build time:** 0.9 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 374 MB

### 7.11.1. Installation of Python

**Note**
There are two package files whose name starts with “python”. The one to extract from is `Python-3.9.2.tar.xz` (notice the uppercase first letter).

Prepare Python for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr   
   --enable-shared 
   --without-ensurepip
```

The meaning of the configure option:

---

`--enable-shared`
This switch prevents installation of static libraries.

`--without-ensurepip`
This switch disables the Python package installer, which is not needed at this stage.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.49.2, “Contents of Python 3.”
7.12. Texinfo-6.7

The Texinfo package contains programs for reading, writing, and converting info pages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.3 SBU
**Required disk space:** 105 MB

### 7.12.1. Installation of Texinfo

Prepare Texinfo for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

**Note**

As part of the configure process, a test is made that indicates an error for TestXS_la-TestXS.lo. This is not relevant for LFS and should be ignored.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.68.2, “Contents of Texinfo.”
7.13. Util-linux-2.36.2

The Util-linux package contains miscellaneous utility programs.

Approximate build time: 0.7 SBU
Required disk space: 134 MB

7.13.1. Installation of Util-linux

The FHS recommends using the /var/lib/hwclock directory instead of the usual /etc directory as the location for the adjtime file. Create this directory with:

```
mkdir -pv /var/lib/hwclock
```

Prepare Util-linux for compilation:

```
./configure ADJTIME_PATH=/var/lib/hwclock/adjtime    \
   --docdir=/usr/share/doc/util-linux-2.36.2      \
   --disable-chfn-chsh   \
   --disable-login      \
   --disable-nologin    \
   --disable-su         \
   --disable-setpriv    \
   --disable-runuser    \
   --disable-pylibmount \
   --disable-static     \
   --without-python     \
   runstatedir=/run
```

The meaning of the configure options:

`ADJTIME_PATH=/var/lib/hwclock/adjtime`
This sets the location of the file recording information about the hardware clock in accordance to the FHS. This is not strictly needed for this temporary tool, but it prevents creating a file at another location, which would not be overwritten or removed when building the final util-linux package.

`--disable-*`
These switches prevent warnings about building components that require packages not in LFS or not installed yet.

`--without-python`
This switch disables using Python. It avoids trying to build unneeded bindings.

`runstatedir=/run`
This switch sets the location of the socket used by `uuidd` and `libuuid` correctly.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Details on this package are located in Section 8.73.2, “Contents of Util-linux.”
7.14. Cleaning up and Saving the Temporary System

The libtool .la files are only useful when linking with static libraries. They are unneeded, and potentially harmful, when using dynamic shared libraries, specially when using non-autotools build systems. While still in chroot, remove those files now:

```
find /usr/{lib,libexec} -name ".*.(a|la)" -delete
```

Remove the documentation of the temporary tools, to prevent them from ending up in the final system, and save about 35 MB:

```
rm -rf /usr/share/{info,man,doc}/*
```

**Note**

All the remaining steps in this section are optional. Nevertheless, as soon as you begin installing packages in Chapter 8, the temporary tools will be overwritten. So it may be a good idea to do a backup of the temporary tools as described below. The other steps are only needed if you are really short on disk space.

The following steps are performed from outside the chroot environment. That means, you have to leave the chroot environment first before continuing. The reason for that is to:

- make sure that objects are not in use while they are manipulated.
- get access to file system locations outside of the chroot environment to store/read the backup archive which should not be placed within the $LFS hierarchy for safety reasons.

Leave the chroot environment and unmount the kernel virtual file systems:

```
exit
umount $LFS/dev{/pts,}
umount $LFS/{sys,proc,run}
```

7.14.1. Stripping

If the LFS partition is rather small, it is good to know that unnecessary items can be removed. The executables and libraries built so far contain a little over 90 MB of unneeded debugging symbols.

Strip off debugging symbols from binaries:

```
strip --strip-debug $LFS/usr/lib/*
strip --strip-unneeded $LFS/usr/{,s}bin/*
strip --strip-unneeded $LFS/tools/bin/*
```

These commands will skip a number of files reporting that it does not recognize their file format. Most of these are scripts instead of binaries.
Take care NOT to use `--strip-unneeded` on the libraries. The static ones would be destroyed and the toolchain packages would need to be built all over again.

At this point, you should have at least 5 GB of free space on the chroot partition that can be used to build and install Glibc and GCC in the next phase. If you can build and install Glibc, you can build and install the rest too. You can check the free disk space with the command `df -h $LFS`.

### 7.14.2. Backup

Now that the essential tools have been created, its time to think about a backup. When every check has passed successfully in the previously built packages, your temporary tools are in a good state and might be backed up for later reuse. In case of fatal failures in the subsequent chapters, it often turns out that removing everything and starting over (more carefully) is the best option to recover. Unfortunately, all the temporary tools will be removed, too. To avoid spending extra time to redo something which has been built successfully, prepare a backup.

Make sure you have at least 600 MB free disk space (the source tarballs will be included in the backup archive) in the home directory of user `root`.

Create the backup archive by running the following command:

```bash
cd $LFS &&
```

Replace `$HOME` by a directory of your choice if you do not want to have the backup stored in `root`'s home directory.

### 7.14.3. Restore

In case some mistakes have been made and you need to start over, you can use this backup to restore the temporary tools and save some recovery time. Since the sources are located under `$LFS`, they are included in the backup archive as well, so they do not need to be downloaded again. After checking that `$LFS` is set properly, restore the backup by executing the following commands:

```bash
cd $LFS &&
rm -rf ./* &&
tar -xpf $HOME/lfs-temp-tools-10.1-systemd.tar.xz
```

Again, double check that the environment has been setup properly and continue building the rest of the system.

**Important**

If you left the chroot environment either to strip off debug symbols, create a backup, or restart building using a restore, remember to mount the kernel virtual filesystems now again as described in Section 7.3, “Preparing Virtual Kernel File Systems” and re-enter the chroot environment (see Section 7.4, “Entering the Chroot Environment”) again before continuing.
Part IV. Building the LFS System
Chapter 8. Installing Basic System Software

8.1. Introduction

In this chapter, we start constructing the LFS system in earnest.

The installation of this software is straightforward. Although in many cases the installation instructions could be made shorter and more generic, we have opted to provide the full instructions for every package to minimize the possibilities for mistakes. The key to learning what makes a Linux system work is to know what each package is used for and why you (or the system) may need it.

We do not recommend using optimizations. They can make a program run slightly faster, but they may also cause compilation difficulties and problems when running the program. If a package refuses to compile when using optimization, try to compile it without optimization and see if that fixes the problem. Even if the package does compile when using optimization, there is the risk it may have been compiled incorrectly because of the complex interactions between the code and build tools. Also note that the -march and -mtune options using values not specified in the book have not been tested. This may cause problems with the toolchain packages (Binutils, GCC and Glibc). The small potential gains achieved in using compiler optimizations are often outweighed by the risks. First-time builders of LFS are encouraged to build without custom optimizations. The subsequent system will still run very fast and be stable at the same time.

Before the installation instructions, each installation page provides information about the package, including a concise description of what it contains, approximately how long it will take to build, and how much disk space is required during this building process. Following the installation instructions, there is a list of programs and libraries (along with brief descriptions) that the package installs.

Note

The SBU values and required disk space includes test suite data for all applicable packages in Chapter 8. SBU values have been calculated using a single CPU core (-j1) for all operations.

8.1.1. About libraries

In general, the LFS editors discourage building and installing static libraries. The original purpose for most static libraries has been made obsolete in a modern Linux system. In addition, linking a static library into a program can be detrimental. If an update to the library is needed to remove a security problem, all programs that use the static library will need to be relinked to the new library. Since the use of static libraries is not always obvious, the relevant programs (and the procedures needed to do the linking) may not even be known.

In the procedures in this chapter, we remove or disable installation of most static libraries. Usually this is done by passing a --disable-static option to configure. In other cases, alternate means are needed. In a few cases, especially glibc and gcc, the use of static libraries remains essential to the general package building process.

For a more complete discussion of libraries, see the discussion Libraries: Static or shared? in the BLFS book.

8.2. Package Management

Package Management is an often requested addition to the LFS Book. A Package Manager allows tracking the installation of files making it easy to remove and upgrade packages. As well as the binary and library files, a package manager will handle the installation of configuration files. Before you begin to wonder, NO—this section will not talk
about nor recommend any particular package manager. What it provides is a rundown of the more popular techniques and how they work. The perfect package manager for you may be among these techniques or may be a combination of two or more of these techniques. This section briefly mentions issues that may arise when upgrading packages.

Some reasons why no package manager is mentioned in LFS or BLFS include:

- Dealing with package management takes the focus away from the goals of these books—teaching how a Linux system is built.
- There are multiple solutions for package management, each having its strengths and drawbacks. Including one that satisfies all audiences is difficult.

There are some hints written on the topic of package management. Visit the Hints Project and see if one of them fits your need.

8.2.1. Upgrade Issues

A Package Manager makes it easy to upgrade to newer versions when they are released. Generally the instructions in the LFS and BLFS books can be used to upgrade to the newer versions. Here are some points that you should be aware of when upgrading packages, especially on a running system.

- If Glibc needs to be upgraded to a newer version, (e.g. from glibc-2.31 to glibc-2.32), it is safer to rebuild LFS. Though you may be able to rebuild all the packages in their dependency order, we do not recommend it.
- If a package containing a shared library is updated, and if the name of the library changes, then any the packages dynamically linked to the library need to be recompiled in order to link against the newer library. (Note that there is no correlation between the package version and the name of the library.) For example, consider a package foo-1.2.3 that installs a shared library with name libfoo.so.1. If you upgrade the package to a newer version foo-1.2.4 that installs a shared library with name libfoo.so.2. In this case, any packages that are dynamically linked to libfoo.so.1 need to be recompiled to link against libfoo.so.2 in order to use the new library version. You should not remove the previous libraries unless all the dependent packages are recompiled.

8.2.2. Package Management Techniques

The following are some common package management techniques. Before making a decision on a package manager, do some research on the various techniques, particularly the drawbacks of the particular scheme.

8.2.2.1. It is All in My Head!

Yes, this is a package management technique. Some folks do not find the need for a package manager because they know the packages intimately and know what files are installed by each package. Some users also do not need any package management because they plan on rebuilding the entire system when a package is changed.

8.2.2.2. Install in Separate Directories

This is a simplistic package management that does not need any extra package to manage the installations. Each package is installed in a separate directory. For example, package foo-1.1 is installed in /usr/pkg/foo-1.1 and a symlink is made from /usr/pkg/foo to /usr/pkg/foo-1.1. When installing a new version foo-1.2, it is installed in /usr/pkg/foo-1.2 and the previous symlink is replaced by a symlink to the new version.

Environment variables such as PATH, LD_LIBRARY_PATH, MANPATH, INFOPATH and CPPFLAGS need to be expanded to include /usr/pkg/foo. For more than a few packages, this scheme becomes unmanageable.
8.2.2.3. Symlink Style Package Management

This is a variation of the previous package management technique. Each package is installed similar to the previous scheme. But instead of making the symlink, each file is symlinked into the /usr hierarchy. This removes the need to expand the environment variables. Though the symlinks can be created by the user to automate the creation, many package managers have been written using this approach. A few of the popular ones include Stow, Epkg, Graft, and Depot.

The installation needs to be faked, so that the package thinks that it is installed in /usr though in reality it is installed in the /usr/pkg hierarchy. Installing in this manner is not usually a trivial task. For example, consider that you are installing a package libfoo-1.1. The following instructions may not install the package properly:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr/pkg/libfoo/1.1
make
make install
```

The installation will work, but the dependent packages may not link to libfoo as you would expect. If you compile a package that links against libfoo, you may notice that it is linked to /usr/pkg/libfoo/1.1/lib/libfoo.so.1 instead of /usr/lib/libfoo.so.1 as you would expect. The correct approach is to use the DESTDIR strategy to fake installation of the package. This approach works as follows:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
make
make DESTDIR=/usr/pkg/libfoo/1.1 install
```

Most packages support this approach, but there are some which do not. For the non-compliant packages, you may either need to manually install the package, or you may find that it is easier to install some problematic packages into /opt.

8.2.2.4. Timestamp Based

In this technique, a file is timestamped before the installation of the package. After the installation, a simple use of the find command with the appropriate options can generate a log of all the files installed after the timestamp file was created. A package manager written with this approach is install-log.

Though this scheme has the advantage of being simple, it has two drawbacks. If, during installation, the files are installed with any timestamp other than the current time, those files will not be tracked by the package manager. Also, this scheme can only be used when one package is installed at a time. The logs are not reliable if two packages are being installed on two different consoles.

8.2.2.5. Tracing Installation Scripts

In this approach, the commands that the installation scripts perform are recorded. There are two techniques that one can use:

The LD_PRELOAD environment variable can be set to point to a library to be preloaded before installation. During installation, this library tracks the packages that are being installed by attaching itself to various executables such as cp, install, mv and tracking the system calls that modify the filesystem. For this approach to work, all the executables need to be dynamically linked without the suid or sgid bit. Preloading the library may cause some unwanted side-effects during installation. Therefore, it is advised that one performs some tests to ensure that the package manager does not break anything and logs all the appropriate files.

The second technique is to use strace, which logs all system calls made during the execution of the installation scripts.
8.2.2.6. Creating Package Archives

In this scheme, the package installation is faked into a separate tree as described in the Symlink style package management. After the installation, a package archive is created using the installed files. This archive is then used to install the package either on the local machine or can even be used to install the package on other machines.

This approach is used by most of the package managers found in the commercial distributions. Examples of package managers that follow this approach are RPM (which, incidentally, is required by the Linux Standard Base Specification), pkg-utils, Debian's apt, and Gentoo's Portage system. A hint describing how to adopt this style of package management for LFS systems is located at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/fakeroot.txt.

Creation of package files that include dependency information is complex and is beyond the scope of LFS.

Slackware uses a tar based system for package archives. This system purposely does not handle package dependencies as more complex package managers do. For details of Slackware package management, see http://www.slackbook.org/html/package-management.html.

8.2.2.7. User Based Management

This scheme, unique to LFS, was devised by Matthias Benkmann, and is available from the Hints Project. In this scheme, each package is installed as a separate user into the standard locations. Files belonging to a package are easily identified by checking the user ID. The features and shortcomings of this approach are too complex to describe in this section. For the details please see the hint at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/more_control_and_pkg_man.txt.

8.2.3. Deploying LFS on Multiple Systems

One of the advantages of an LFS system is that there are no files that depend on the position of files on a disk system. Cloning an LFS build to another computer with the same architecture as the base system is as simple as using tar on the LFS partition that contains the root directory (about 250MB uncompressed for a base LFS build), copying that file via network transfer or CD-ROM to the new system and expanding it. From that point, a few configuration files will have to be changed. Configuration files that may need to be updated include: /etc/hosts, /etc/fstab, /etc/passwd, /etc/group, /etc/shadow, and /etc/ld.so.conf.

A custom kernel may need to be built for the new system depending on differences in system hardware and the original kernel configuration.

Note

There have been some reports of issues when copying between similar but not identical architectures. For instance, the instruction set for an Intel system is not identical with an AMD processor and later versions of some processors may have instructions that are unavailable in earlier versions.

Finally the new system has to be made bootable via Section 10.4, “Using GRUB to Set Up the Boot Process”.

94
8.3. Man-pages-5.10

The Man-pages package contains over 2,200 man pages.

Approximate build time:  less than 0.1 SBU
Required disk space:  4.7 MB

8.3.1. Installation of Man-pages

Install Man-pages by running:

```
make install
```

8.3.2. Contents of Man-pages

Installed files: various man pages

Short Descriptions

man pages  Describe C programming language functions, important device files, and significant configuration files
8.4. Iana-Etc-20210202

The Iana-Etc package provides data for network services and protocols.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 4.7 MB

8.4.1. Installation of Iana-Etc

For this package, we only need to copy the files into place:

```bash
cp services protocols /etc
```

8.4.2. Contents of Iana-Etc

**Installed files:** /etc/protocols and /etc/services

**Short Descriptions**

- **/etc/protocols** Describes the various DARPA Internet protocols that are available from the TCP/IP subsystem
- **/etc/services** Provides a mapping between friendly textual names for internet services, and their underlying assigned port numbers and protocol types
8.5. Glibc-2.33

The Glibc package contains the main C library. This library provides the basic routines for allocating memory, searching directories, opening and closing files, reading and writing files, string handling, pattern matching, arithmetic, and so on.

Approximate build time: 19 SBU
Required disk space: 2.5 GB

8.5.1. Installation of Glibc

Some of the Glibc programs use the non-FHS compliant /var/db directory to store their runtime data. Apply the following patch to make such programs store their runtime data in the FHS-compliant locations:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../glibc-2.33-fhs-1.patch
```

Fix a bug that causes issues with chrooted applications:

```
sed -e '402a\n      *result = local->data.services[database_index];' \n   -i nss/nss_database.c
```

The Glibc documentation recommends building Glibc in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v build
cd       build
```

Prepare Glibc for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr                            \n   --disable-werror                         \n   --enable-kernel=3.2                      \n   --enable-stack-protector=strong          \n   --with-headers=/usr/include              \nlibc_cv_slibdir=/lib
```

The meaning of the configure options:

--disable-werror
This option disables the -Werror option passed to GCC. This is necessary for running the test suite.

--enable-kernel=3.2
This option tells the build system that this glibc may be used with kernels as old as 3.2. This means generating workarounds in case a system call introduced in a later version cannot be used.

--enable-stack-protector=strong
This option increases system security by adding extra code to check for buffer overflows, such as stack smashing attacks.

--with-headers=/usr/include
This option tells the build system where to find the kernel API headers.

libc_cv_slibdir=/lib
This variable sets the correct library for all systems. We do not want lib64 to be used.
libc_cv_include_x86_isa_level=no

This disables “x86 ISA needed” property in Glibc libraries. Use it if you are building Glibc with -march option in CFLAGS, to workaround an issue in Glibc-2.33 breaking it.

Compile the package:

make

![Important]

In this section, the test suite for Glibc is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstance.

Generally a few tests do not pass. The test failures listed below are usually safe to ignore.

make check

You may see some test failures. The Glibc test suite is somewhat dependent on the host system. This is a list of the most common issues seen for some versions of LFS:

• io/tst-lchmod is known to fail in the LFS chroot environment.
• misc/tst-ttymame is known to fail in the LFS chroot environment.
• elf/tst-cpu-features-cpuinfo may fail on some architectures.
• The nss/tst-nss-files-hosts-multi test may fail for reasons that have not been determined.
• The rt/tst-cputimer[1,2,3] tests depend on the host system kernel. Kernels 4.14.91–4.14.96, 4.19.13–4.19.18, and 4.20.0–4.20.5 are known to cause these tests to fail.
• The math tests sometimes fail when running on systems where the CPU is not a relatively new Intel or AMD processor.

Though it is a harmless message, the install stage of Glibc will complain about the absence of /etc/ld.so.conf. Prevent this warning with:

touch /etc/ld.so.conf

Fix the generated Makefile to skip an unneeded sanity check that fails in the LFS partial environment:

sed '/test-installation/s@$(PERL)@echo not running@' -i ../Makefile

Install the package:

make install

Install the configuration file and runtime directory for nscd:

cp -v .. /nscd/nscd.conf /etc/nscd.conf
mkdir -pv /var/cache/nscd

Install the systemd support files for nscd:

install -v -Dm644 .. /nscd/nscd.tmpfiles /usr/lib/tmpfiles.d/nscd.conf
install -v -Dm644 .. /nscd/nscd.service /lib/systemd/system/nscd.service

Next, install the locales that can make the system respond in a different language. None of the locales are required, but if some of them are missing, the test suites of future packages would skip important testcases.
Individual locales can be installed using the **localedef** program. E.g., the first **localedef** command below combines the `/usr/share/i18n/locales/cs_CZ` charset-independent locale definition with the `/usr/share/i18n/charmaps/UTF-8.gz` charmap definition and appends the result to the `/usr/lib/locale/locale-archive` file. The following instructions will install the minimum set of locales necessary for the optimal coverage of tests:

```bash
mkdir -pv /usr/lib/locale
localedef -i POSIX -f UTF-8 C.UTF-8 2> /dev/null || true
localedef -i cs_CZ -f UTF-8 cs_CZ.UTF-8
localedef -i de_DE -f ISO-8859-1 de_DE
localedef -i de_DE@euro -f ISO-8859-15 de_DE@euro
localedef -i de_DE -f UTF-8 de_DE.UTF-8
localedef -i el_GR -f ISO-8859-7 el_GR
localedef -i en_GB -f UTF-8 en_GB.UTF-8
localedef -i en_HK -f ISO-8859-1 en_HK
localedef -i en_PH -f ISO-8859-1 en_PH
localedef -i en_US -f ISO-8859-1 en_US
localedef -i en_US -f UTF-8 en_US.UTF-8
localedef -i es_MX -f ISO-8859-1 es_MX
localedef -i fa_IR -f UTF-8 fa_IR
localedef -i fr_FR -f ISO-8859-1 fr_FR
localedef -i fr_FR@euro -f ISO-8859-15 fr_FR@euro
localedef -i fr_FR -f UTF-8 fr_FR.UTF-8
localedef -i it_IT -f ISO-8859-1 it_IT
localedef -i it_IT -f UTF-8 it_IT.UTF-8
localedef -i ja_JP -f SHIFT_JIS ja_JP.SIJS 2> /dev/null || true
localedef -i ja_JP -f UTF-8 ja_JP.UTF-8
localedef -i ru_RU -f KOI8-R ru_RU.KOI8-R
localedef -i ru_RU -f UTF-8 ru_RU.UTF-8
localedef -i tr_TR -f UTF-8 tr_TR.UTF-8
localedef -i zh_CN -f GB18030 zh_CN.GB18030
localedef -i zh_HK -f BIG5-HKSCS zh_HK.BIG5-HKSCS
```

In addition, install the locale for your own country, language and character set.

Alternatively, install all locales listed in the `glibc-2.33/localedata/SUPPORTED` file (it includes every locale listed above and many more) at once with the following time-consuming command:

```bash
make localedata/install-locales
```

Then use the **localedef** command to create and install locales not listed in the `glibc-2.33/localedata/SUPPORTED` file in the unlikely case you need them.

**Note**

Glibc now uses libidn2 when resolving internationalized domain names. This is a run time dependency. If this capability is needed, the instructions for installing libidn2 are in the BLFS *libidn2 page.*
8.5.2. Configuring Glibc

8.5.2.1. Adding nsswitch.conf

The /etc/nsswitch.conf file needs to be created because the Glibc defaults do not work well in a networked environment.

Create a new file /etc/nsswitch.conf by running the following:

```
cat > /etc/nsswitch.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/nsswitch.conf
passwd: files
group: files
shadow: files
hosts: files dns
networks: files
protocols: files
services: files
ethers: files
rpc: files

# End /etc/nsswitch.conf
EOF
```

8.5.2.2. Adding time zone data

Install and set up the time zone data with the following:

```
tar -xf ../..../tzdata2021a.tar.gz
ZONEINFO=/usr/share/zoneinfo
mkdir -pv $ZONEINFO/{posix,right}

for tz in etcetera southamerica northamerica europe africa antarctica \
       asia australasia backward; do
    zic -L /dev/null -d $ZONEINFO ${tz}
zic -L /dev/null -d $ZONEINFO/posix ${tz}
zic -L leapseconds -d $ZONEINFO/right ${tz}
done

cp -v zone.tab zone1970.tab iso3166.tab $ZONEINFO
zic -d $ZONEINFO -p America/New_York
unset ZONEINFO
```
The meaning of the zic commands:

\texttt{zic -L /dev/null ...}

This creates posix time zones without any leap seconds. It is conventional to put these in both \texttt{zoneinfo} and \texttt{zoneinfo/posix}. It is necessary to put the POSIX time zones in \texttt{zoneinfo}, otherwise various test-suites will report errors. On an embedded system, where space is tight and you do not intend to ever update the time zones, you could save 1.9 MB by not using the posix directory, but some applications or test-suites might produce some failures.

\texttt{zic -L leapseconds ...}

This creates right time zones, including leap seconds. On an embedded system, where space is tight and you do not intend to ever update the time zones, or care about the correct time, you could save 1.9MB by omitting the right directory.

\texttt{zic ... -p ...}

This creates the \texttt{posixrules} file. We use New York because POSIX requires the daylight savings time rules to be in accordance with US rules.

One way to determine the local time zone is to run the following script:

\texttt{tzselect}

After answering a few questions about the location, the script will output the name of the time zone (e.g., \texttt{America/Edmonton}). There are also some other possible time zones listed in /usr/share/zoneinfo such as \texttt{Canada/Eastern} or \texttt{EST5EDT} that are not identified by the script but can be used.

Then create the /etc/localtime file by running:

\texttt{ln -sfv /usr/share/zoneinfo/<xxx> /etc/localtime}

Replace \texttt{<xxx>} with the name of the time zone selected (e.g., Canada/Eastern).

\textbf{8.5.2.3. Configuring the Dynamic Loader}

By default, the dynamic loader (/lib/ld-linux.so.2) searches through /lib and /usr/lib for dynamic libraries that are needed by programs as they are run. However, if there are libraries in directories other than /lib and /usr/lib, these need to be added to the /etc/ld.so.conf file in order for the dynamic loader to find them. Two directories that are commonly known to contain additional libraries are /usr/local/lib and /opt/lib, so add those directories to the dynamic loader's search path.

Create a new file /etc/ld.so.conf by running the following:

\texttt{cat > /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF"}
\texttt{# Begin /etc/ld.so.conf
/usr/local/lib}
\texttt{/opt/lib
EOF}
If desired, the dynamic loader can also search a directory and include the contents of files found there. Generally the files in this include directory are one line specifying the desired library path. To add this capability run the following commands:

```
cat >> /etc/ld.so.conf << "EOF"
# Add an include directory
include /etc/ld.so.conf.d/* .conf
EOF
mkdir -pv /etc/ld.so.conf.d
```

8.5.3. Contents of Glibc

**Installed programs:**
catchsegv, gencat, getconf, getent, iconv, iconvconfig, ldconfig, ldd, lddlibc4, locale, localedef, makedb, mtrace, nsd, pprofiledump, pld, sln, sotruss, spro, tzselect, xtrace, zdump, and zic

**Installed libraries:**
ld-2.33.so, libBrokenLocale.{a,so}, libSegFault.so, libanl.{a,so}, libc.{a,so}, libc_nonshared.a, libcrypt.{a,so}, libdl.{a,so}, libg.a, libm.{a,so}, libmcheck.a, libmemusage.so, libmvec.{a,so}, libnsl.{a,so}, libnss_compat.so, libnss_dns.so, libnss_files.so, libnss_hesiod.so, libpcprofile.so, libpthread.{a,so}, libpthread_nonshared.a, libresolv.{a,so}, librt.{a,so}, libthread_db.so, and libutil.{a,so}

**Installed directories:**
/usr/include/arpa, /usr/include/bits, /usr/include/gnu, /usr/include/net, /usr/include/netatalk, /usr/include/netpacket, /usr/include/protocols, /usr/include/rpc, /usr/include/sys, /usr/include/audit, /usr/include/getconf, /usr/libexec/getconf, /usr/share/i18n, /usr/share/zoneinfo, /var/cache/nscd, and /var/lib/nss_db

**Short Descriptions**

- **catchsegv**: Can be used to create a stack trace when a program terminates with a segmentation fault
- **gencat**: Generates message catalogues
- **getconf**: Displays the system configuration values for file system specific variables
- **getent**: Gets entries from an administrative database
- **iconv**: Performs character set conversion
- **iconvconfig**: Creates fastloading **iconv** module configuration files
- **ldconfig**: Configures the dynamic linker runtime bindings
- **ldd**: Reports which shared libraries are required by each given program or shared library
- **lddlibc4**: Assists **ldd** with object files
- **locale**: Prints various information about the current locale
- **localedef**: Compiles locale specifications
- **makedb**: Creates a simple database from textual input
- **mtrace**: Reads and interprets a memory trace file and displays a summary in human-readable format
- **nsd**: A daemon that provides a cache for the most common name service requests
**pcprofiledump**  
Dump information generated by PC profiling

**pldd**  
Lists dynamic shared objects used by running processes

**sln**  
A statically linked `ln` program

**sotruss**  
Traces shared library procedure calls of a specified command

**sprof**  
Reads and displays shared object profiling data

**tzselect**  
Asks the user about the location of the system and reports the corresponding time zone description

**xtrace**  
Traces the execution of a program by printing the currently executed function

**zdump**  
The time zone dumper

**zic**  
The time zone compiler

**ld-2.33.so**  
The helper program for shared library executables

**libBrokenLocale**  
Used internally by Glibc as a gross hack to get broken programs (e.g., some Motif applications) running. See comments in `glibc-2.33/locale/broken_cur_max.c` for more information

**libSegFault**  
The segmentation fault signal handler, used by `catchsegv`

**libnsl**  
An asynchronous name lookup library

**libc**  
The main C library

**libcrypt**  
The cryptography library

**libdl**  
The dynamic linking interface library

**libg**  
Dummy library containing no functions. Previously was a runtime library for `g++`

**libm**  
The mathematical library

**libmcheck**  
Turns on memory allocation checking when linked to

**libmemusage**  
Used by `memusage` to help collect information about the memory usage of a program

**libnss**  
The Name Service Switch libraries, containing functions for resolving host names, user names, group names, aliases, services, protocols, etc.

**libpcprofile**  
Can be preloaded to PC profile an executable

**libpthread**  
The POSIX threads library

**libresolv**  
Contains functions for creating, sending, and interpreting packets to the Internet domain name servers

**librt**  
Contains functions providing most of the interfaces specified by the POSIX.1b Realtime Extension

**libthread_db**  
Contains functions useful for building debuggers for multi-threaded programs

**libutil**  
Contains code for “standard” functions used in many different Unix utilities
8.6. Zlib-1.2.11

The Zlib package contains compression and decompression routines used by some programs.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 5.0 MB

8.6.1. Installation of Zlib

Prepare Zlib for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

The shared library needs to be moved to /lib, and as a result the .so file in /usr/lib will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libz.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libz.so) /usr/lib/libz.so
```

Remove an useless static library:

```
rm -fv /usr/lib/libz.a
```

8.6.2. Contents of Zlib

**Installed libraries:** libz.so

**Short Descriptions**

- **libz** Contains compression and decompression functions used by some programs
8.7. Bzip2-1.0.8

The Bzip2 package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. Compressing text files with **bzip2** yields a much better compression percentage than with the traditional **gzip**.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 7.5 MB

8.7.1. Installation of Bzip2

Apply a patch that will install the documentation for this package:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../bzip2-1.0.8-install_docs-1.patch
```

The following command ensures installation of symbolic links are relative:

```
sed -i 's@\(ln -s -f \)$(PREFIX)/bin/@\1@' Makefile
```

Ensure the man pages are installed into the correct location:

```
sed -i "s@(PREFIX)/man@(PREFIX)/share/man@g" Makefile
```

Prepare Bzip2 for compilation with:

```
make -f Makefile-libbz2_so  
make clean
```

The meaning of the make parameter:

```
-f Makefile-libbz2_so
```

This will cause Bzip2 to be built using a different **Makefile** file, in this case the **Makefile-libbz2.so** file, which creates a dynamic **libbz2.so** library and links the Bzip2 utilities against it.

Compile and test the package:

```
make
```

Install the programs:

```
make PREFIX=/usr install
```

Install the shared **bzip2** binary into the **/bin** directory, make some necessary symbolic links, and clean up:

```
cp -v bzip2-shared /bin/bzip2  
cp -av libbz2.so* /lib  
ln -sv ../..:/lib/libbz2.so.1.0 /usr/lib/libbz2.so  
rm -v /usr/bin/{bunzip2,bzcat,bzip2}  
ln -sv bzip2 /bin/bunzip2  
ln -sv bzip2 /bin/bzcat
```

Remove an useless static library:

```
rm -fv /usr/lib/libbz2.a
```
8.7.2. Contents of Bzip2

**Installed programs:**
- bunzip2 (link to bzip2)
- bzcat (link to bzip2)
- bzcmp (link to bzip2)
- bzdifff
- bzgrep (link to bzgrep)
- bzfgrep (link to bzgrep)
- bzip2
- bzip2recover
- bzless (link to bzmore)
- bzmore

**Installed libraries:**
- libbz2.so

**Installed directory:**
- /usr/share/doc/bzip2-1.0.8

**Short Descriptions**

- **bunzip2**: Decompresses bzipped files
- **bzcat**: Decompresses to standard output
- **bzcmp**: Runs `cmp` on bzipped files
- **bzdifff**: Runs `diff` on bzipped files
- **bzgrep**: Runs `grep` on bzipped files
- **bzfgrep**: Runs `fgrep` on bzipped files
- **bzgrep**: Runs `grep` on bzipped files
- **bzip2**: Compresses files using the Burrows-Wheeler block sorting text compression algorithm with Huffman coding; the compression rate is better than that achieved by more conventional compressors using “Lempel-Ziv” algorithms, like `gzip`
- **bzip2recover**: Tries to recover data from damaged bzipped files
- **bzless**: Runs `less` on bzipped files
- **bzmore**: Runs `more` on bzipped files
- **libbz2**: The library implementing lossless, block-sorting data compression, using the Burrows-Wheeler algorithm
8.8. Xz-5.2.5

The Xz package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files. It provides capabilities for the lzma and the newer xz compression formats. Compressing text files with `xz` yields a better compression percentage than with the traditional `gzip` or `bzip2` commands.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 15 MB

8.8.1. Installation of Xz

Prepare Xz for compilation with:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr    
  --disable-static \       
  --docdir=/usr/share/doc/xz-5.2.5
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package and make sure that all essential files are in the correct directory:

```
make install  
mv -v /usr/bin/{lzma,unlzma,lzcat,xz,unxz,xzcat} /bin  
mv -v /usr/lib/liblzma.so.* /lib  
ln -svf ../..:/lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/liblzma.so) /usr/lib/liblzma.so
```

8.8.2. Contents of Xz

**Installed programs:**  
- `lzcat` (link to xz)  
- `lzcmp` (link to xzdiff)  
- `lzdiff` (link to xzdiff)  
- `lzegrep` (link to xzgrep)  
- `lzfgrep` (link to xzgrep)  
- `lzgrep` (link to xzgrep)  
- `lzmadec`  
- `lzmainfo`  
- `lzmore` (link to xzmore)  
- `unlzma` (link to xz)  
- `unxz` (link to xz)  
- `xzcat` (link to xz)  
- `xzcmp` (link to xzdiff)  
- `xzdec`  
- `xzdiff`  
- `xzegrep` (link to xzgrep)  
- `xzfgrep` (link to xzgrep)  
- `xzgrep`  
- `xzless`  
- `xzmore`  

**Installed libraries:**  
- `liblzma.so`

**Installed directories:**  
- `/usr/include/lzma` and `/usr/share/doc/xz-5.2.5`

**Short Descriptions**

- `lzcat` Decompresses to standard output
- `lzcmp` Runs `cmp` on LZMA compressed files
- `lzdiff` Runs `diff` on LZMA compressed files
- `lzegrep` Runs `egrep` on LZMA compressed files
- `lzfgrep` Runs `fgrep` on LZMA compressed files
- `lzgrep` Runs `grep` on LZMA compressed files
- `lzmadec`  
- `lzmainfo`  
- `lzmore` (link to xzmore)  
- `unlzma` (link to xz)  
- `unxz` (link to xz)  
- `xzcat` (link to xz)  
- `xzcmp` (link to xzdiff)  
- `xzdec`  
- `xzdiff`  
- `xzegrep` (link to xzgrep)  
- `xzfgrep` (link to xzgrep)  
- `xzgrep`  
- `xzless`  
- `xzmore`
lzless  Runs less on LZMA compressed files
lzma    Compresses or decompresses files using the LZMA format
lzmadec A small and fast decoder for LZMA compressed files
lzmainfo Shows information stored in the LZMA compressed file header
lzmore  Runs more on LZMA compressed files
unlzma  Decompresses files using the LZMA format
unxz    Decompresses files using the XZ format
xz      Compresses or decompresses files using the XZ format
xzcat   Decompresses to standard output
xzcmp   Runs cmp on XZ compressed files
xzdec   A small and fast decoder for XZ compressed files
xzdiff  Runs diff on XZ compressed files
xzegrep Runs egrep on XZ compressed files
xzfgrep Runs fgrep on XZ compressed files
xzgrep  Runs grep on XZ compressed files
xzless  Runs less on XZ compressed files
xzmore  Runs more on XZ compressed files
liblzma The library implementing lossless, block-sorting data compression, using the Lempel-Ziv-Markov chain algorithm
8.9. Zstd-1.4.8

Zstandard is a real-time compression algorithm, providing high compression ratios. It offers a very wide range of compression / speed trade-offs, while being backed by a very fast decoder.

Approximate build time: 1.1 SBU
Required disk space: 59 MB

8.9.1. Installation of Zstd

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make prefix=/usr install
```

Remove the static library and move the shared library to /lib. Also, the .so file in /usr/lib will need to be recreated:

```
rm -v /usr/lib/libzstd.a
mv -v /usr/lib/libzstd.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libzstd.so) /usr/lib/libzstd.so
```

8.9.2. Contents of Zstd

Installed programs:
- `zstd`, `zstdcat` (link to `zstd`), `zstdgrep`, `zstdless`, `zstdmt` (link to `zstd`), and `unzstd` (link to `zstd`)

Installed library:
- `libzstd.so`

Short Descriptions

- **zstd**: Compresses or decompresses files using the ZSTD format
- **zstdgrep**: Runs `grep` on ZSTD compressed files
- **zstdless**: Runs `less` on ZSTD compressed files
- **libzstd**: The library implementing lossless data compression, using the ZSTD algorithm
8.10. File-5.39

The File package contains a utility for determining the type of a given file or files.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 14 MB

8.10.1. Installation of File

Prepare File for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.10.2. Contents of File

Installed programs: file
Installed library: libmagic.so

Short Descriptions

file  Tries to classify each given file; it does this by performing several tests—file system tests, magic number tests, and language tests

libmagic  Contains routines for magic number recognition, used by the file program
8.11. Readline-8.1

The Readline package is a set of libraries that offers command-line editing and history capabilities.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 16 MB

### 8.11.1. Installation of Readline

Reinstalling Readline will cause the old libraries to be moved to `<libraryname>.old`. While this is normally not a problem, in some cases it can trigger a linking bug in `ldconfig`. This can be avoided by issuing the following two seds:

```bash
sed -i '/MV.*old/d' Makefile.in  
sed -i '/{OLDSUFF}/c:' support/shlib-install
```

Prepare Readline for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr  
  --disable-static  
  --with-curses  
  --docdir=/usr/share/doc/readline-8.1
```

The meaning of the configure option:

`--with-curses`

This option tells Readline that it can find the termcap library functions in the curses library, rather than a separate termcap library. It allows generating a correct `readline.pc` file.

Compile the package:

```bash
make SHLIB_LIBS="-lncursesw"
```

The meaning of the make option:

`SHLIB_LIBS="-lncursesw"`

This option forces Readline to link against the `libncursesw` library.

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```bash
make SHLIB_LIBS="-lncursesw" install
```

Now move the dynamic libraries to a more appropriate location and fix up symbolic links:

```bash
mv -v /usr/lib/lib{readline,history}.so.* /lib  
ln -svf ../../../lib/$ (readlink /usr/lib/libreadline.so) /usr/lib/libreadline.so  
ln -svf ../../../lib/$ (readlink /usr/lib/libhistory.so) /usr/lib/libhistory.so
```

If desired, install the documentation:

```bash
install -v -m644 doc/*.{ps,pdf,html,dvi} /usr/share/doc/readline-8.1
```

### 8.11.2. Contents of Readline

**Installed libraries:** libhistory.so and libreadline.so  
**Installed directories:** /usr/include/readline and /usr/share/doc/readline-8.1
Short Descriptions

libhistory  Provides a consistent user interface for recalling lines of history
libreadline  Provides a set of commands for manipulating text entered in an interactive session of a program
8.12. M4-1.4.18

The M4 package contains a macro processor.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 32 MB

8.12.1. Installation of M4

First, make some fixes required by glibc-2.28 and later:

```
sed -i 's/IO_ftrylockfile/IO_EOF_SEEN/ lib/*.c
echo "#define _IO_IN_BACKUP 0x100" >> lib/stdio-impl.h
```

Prepare M4 for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.12.2. Contents of M4

**Installed program:** m4

**Short Descriptions**

**m4**  
Copies the given files while expanding the macros that they contain. These macros are either built-in or user-defined and can take any number of arguments. Besides performing macro expansion, **m4** has built-in functions for including named files, running Unix commands, performing integer arithmetic, manipulating text, recursion, etc. The **m4** program can be used either as a front-end to a compiler or as a macro processor in its own right.
8.13. Bc-3.3.0

The Bc package contains an arbitrary precision numeric processing language.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU

**Required disk space:** 6.7 MB

8.13.1. Installation of Bc

Prepare Bc for compilation:

```
PREFIX=/usr CC=gcc ./configure.sh -G -O3
```

The meaning of the configure options:

- `CC=gcc` - These parameters specify the compiler to use.
- `-O3` - Specify the optimization to use.
- `-G` - Omit parts of the test suite that won't work without a GNU bc present.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test bc, run:

```
make test
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.13.2. Contents of Bc

**Installed programs:** bc and dc

**Short Descriptions**

- **bc**  A command line calculator
- **dc**  A reverse-polish command line calculator
8.14. Flex-2.6.4

The Flex package contains a utility for generating programs that recognize patterns in text.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU
**Required disk space:** 36 MB

8.14.1. Installation of Flex

Prepare Flex for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \ 
  --docdir=/usr/share/doc/flex-2.6.4 \ 
  --disable-static
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results (about 0.5 SBU), issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

A few programs do not know about `flex` yet and try to run its predecessor, `lex`. To support those programs, create a symbolic link named `lex` that runs `flex` in `lex` emulation mode:

```
ln -sv flex /usr/bin/lex
```

8.14.2. Contents of Flex

**Installed programs:** `flex`, `flex++` (link to `flex`), and `lex` (link to `flex`)
**Installed libraries:** `libfl.so`
**Installed directory:** `/usr/share/doc/flex-2.6.4`

**Short Descriptions**

- **flex**: A tool for generating programs that recognize patterns in text; it allows for the versatility to specify the rules for pattern-finding, eradicating the need to develop a specialized program
- **flex++**: An extension of `flex`, is used for generating C++ code and classes. It is a symbolic link to `flex`
- **lex**: A symbolic link that runs `flex` in `lex` emulation mode
- **libfl**: The `flex` library
The Tcl package contains the Tool Command Language, a robust general-purpose scripting language. The Expect package is written in the Tcl language.

**Approximate build time:** 3.8 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 80 MB

## 8.15.1. Installation of Tcl

This package and the next two (Expect and DejaGNU) are installed to support running the test suites for binutils and GCC and other packages. Installing three packages for testing purposes may seem excessive, but it is very reassuring, if not essential, to know that the most important tools are working properly.

First, unpack the documentation by issuing the following command:

```
tar -xf ../tcl8.6.11-html.tar.gz --strip-components=1
```

Prepare Tcl for compilation:

```
SRCDIR=$(pwd)  
cd unix  
./configure --prefix=/usr           \  
--mandir=/usr/share/man \  
$(\[ "$(uname -m)" = x86_64 \] && echo --enable-64bit)
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
$(\[ "$(uname -m)" = x86_64 \] && echo --enable-64bit)
```

The construct \( $(<shell command>) \) is replaced by the output of the shell command. Here this output is empty if running on a 32 bit machine, and is \(--enable-64bit\) if running on a 64 bit machine.

Build the package:

```
make
```

```
sed -e "s|\$SRCDIR/unix|/usr/lib|" \ 
   -e "s|\$SRCDIR|/usr/include|" \ 
   -i tclConfig.sh
```

```
sed -e "s|\$SRCDIR/unix/pkgs/tdbc1.1.2|/usr/lib/tdbc1.1.2|" \ 
   -e "s|\$SRCDIR/pkgs/tdbc1.1.2/generic|/usr/include|" \ 
   -e "s|\$SRCDIR/pkgs/tdbc1.1.2/library|/usr/lib/tcl8.6|" \ 
   -i pkgs/tdbc1.1.2/tdbcConfig.sh
```

```
sed -e "s|\$SRCDIR/unix/pkgs/itcl4.2.1|/usr/lib/itcl4.2.1|" \ 
   -e "s|\$SRCDIR/pkgs/itcl4.2.1/generic|/usr/include|" \ 
   -i pkgs/itcl4.2.1/itclConfig.sh
```

```
unset SRCDIR
```
The various “sed” instructions after the “make” command removes references to the build directory from the configuration files and replaces them with the install directory. This is not mandatory for the remainder of LFS, but may be needed in case a package built later uses Tcl.

To test the results, issue:

```
make test
```

**Note**

In the test results there are several places associated with clock.test that indicate a failure, but the summary at the end indicates no failures. clock.test passes on a complete LFS system.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Make the installed library writable so debugging symbols can be removed later:

```
chmod -v u+w /usr/lib/libtcl8.6.so
```

Install Tcl's headers. The next package, Expect, requires them.

```
make install-private-headers
```

Now make a necessary symbolic link:

```
ln -sfv tclsh8.6 /usr/bin/tclsh
```

Finally, rename a man page that conflicts with a Perl man page:

```
mv /usr/share/man/man3/{Thread,Tcl_Thread}.3
```

### 8.15.2. Contents of Tcl

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Installed programs:</th>
<th>tclsh (link to tclsh8.6) and tclsh8.6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Installed library:</td>
<td>libtcl8.6.so and libtclstub8.6.a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short Descriptions**

- **tclsh8.6**: The Tcl command shell
- **tclsh**: A link to tclsh8.6
- **libtcl8.6.so**: The Tcl library
- **libtclstub8.6.a**: The Tcl Stub library
8.16. Expect-5.45.4

The Expect package contains tools for automating, via scripted dialogues, interactive applications such as `telnet`, `ftp`, `passwd`, `fsck`, `rlogin`, and `tip`. Expect is also useful for testing these same applications as well as easing all sorts of tasks that are prohibitively difficult with anything else. The DejaGnu framework is written in Expect.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 3.9 MB

8.16.1. Installation of Expect

Prepare Expect for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr           \
   --with-tcl=/usr/lib             \
   --enable-shared                 \
   --mandir=/usr/share/man          \ 
   --with-tclinclude=/usr/include
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--with-tcl=/usr/lib
This parameter is needed to tell configure where the tclConfig.sh script is located.

--with-tclinclude=/usr/include
This explicitly tells Expect where to find Tcl’s internal headers.
```

Build the package:

```bash
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```bash
make test
```

Install the package:

```bash
make install
ln -svf expect5.45.4/libexpect5.45.4.so /usr/lib
```

8.16.2. Contents of Expect

**Installed program:** expect  
**Installed library:** libexpect-5.45.so

**Short Descriptions**

- `expect`: Communicates with other interactive programs according to a script
- `libexpect-5.45.so`: Contains functions that allow Expect to be used as a Tcl extension or to be used directly from C or C++ (without Tcl)
8.17. DejaGNU-1.6.2

The DejaGnu package contains a framework for running test suites on GNU tools. It is written in expect, which itself uses Tcl (Tool Command Language).

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 4.6 MB

8.17.1. Installation of DejaGNU

Prepare DejaGNU for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr  
makeinfo --html --no-split -o doc/dejagnu.html doc/dejagnu.texi  
makeinfo --plaintext -o doc/dejagnu.txt  doc/dejagnu.texi
```

Build and install the package:

```
make install  
install -v -dm755 /usr/share/doc/dejagnu-1.6.2  
install -v -m644 doc/dejagnu.{html,txt} /usr/share/doc/dejagnu-1.6.2
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

8.17.2. Contents of DejaGNU

**Installed program:** runtest

**Short Descriptions**

**r**un**t**est  A wrapper script that locates the proper expect shell and then runs DejaGNU
8.18. Binutils-2.36.1

The Binutils package contains a linker, an assembler, and other tools for handling object files.

Approximate build time: 6.2 SBU
Required disk space: 4.9 GB

8.18.1. Installation of Binutils

Verify that the PTYs are working properly inside the chroot environment by performing a simple test:

```
expect -c "spawn ls"
```

This command should output the following:

```
spawn ls
```

If, instead, the output includes the message below, then the environment is not set up for proper PTY operation. This issue needs to be resolved before running the test suites for Binutils and GCC:

```
The system has no more ptys.
Ask your system administrator to create more.
```

Now remove one test that prevents the tests from running to completion:

```
sed -i '/@\tincremental_copy/d' gold/testsuite/Makefile.in
```

The Binutils documentation recommends building Binutils in a dedicated build directory:

```
mkdir -v build
cd build
```

Prepare Binutils for compilation:

```
../configure --prefix=/usr       
    --enable-gold       
    --enable-ld=default 
    --enable-plugins    
    --enable-shared     
    --disable-werror    
    --enable-64-bit-bfd 
    --with-system-zlib
```

The meaning of the configure parameters:

---enable-gold
Build the gold linker and install it as ld.gold (along side the default linker).

---enable-ld=default
Build the original bfd linker and install it as both ld (the default linker) and ld.bfd.

---enable-plugins
Enables plugin support for the linker.
--enable-64-bit-bfd
   Enables 64-bit support (on hosts with narrower word sizes). May not be needed on 64-bit systems, but does no harm.

--with-system-zlib
   Use the installed zlib library rather than building the included version.

Compile the package:

```bash
make tooldir=/usr
```

The meaning of the make parameter:

```
tooldir=/usr
```

Normally, the tooldir (the directory where the executables will ultimately be located) is set to $(exec_prefix)/$(target_alias). For example, x86_64 machines would expand that to /usr/x86_64-unknown-linux-gnu. Because this is a custom system, this target-specific directory in /usr is not required. $(exec_prefix)/$(target_alias) would be used if the system was used to cross-compile (for example, compiling a package on an Intel machine that generates code that can be executed on PowerPC machines).

**Important**

The test suite for Binutils in this section is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstances.

Test the results:

```bash
make -k check
```

Four tests named “Run property ...” are known to fail.

Install the package:

```bash
make tooldir=/usr install
```

Remove useless static libraries:

```bash
rm -fv /usr/lib/lib{bfd,ctf,ctf-nobfd,opcodes}.a
```

### 8.18.2. Contents of Binutils

**Installed programs:**

- addr2line
- ar
- as
- c++filt
- dwp
- elfedit
- gprof
- ld
- ld.bfd
- ld.gold
- nm
- objcopy
- objdump
- ranlib
- readelf
- size
- strings
- strip

**Installed libraries:**

- libbfd.so
- libcfn.so
- libcfn-nobfd.so
- libopcodes.so

**Installed directory:**

- /usr/lib/ldscripts

**Short Descriptions**

- **addr2line**: Translates program addresses to file names and line numbers; given an address and the name of an executable, it uses the debugging information in the executable to determine which source file and line number are associated with the address

- **ar**: Creates, modifies, and extracts from archives

- **as**: An assembler that assembles the output of gcc into object files
**c++filt**  
Used by the linker to de-mangle C++ and Java symbols and to keep overloaded functions from clashing

**dwp**  
The DWARF packaging utility

**elfedit**  
Updates the ELF header of ELF files

**gprof**  
Displays call graph profile data

**ld**  
A linker that combines a number of object and archive files into a single file, relocating their data and tying up symbol references

**ld.gold**  
A cut down version of ld that only supports the elf object file format

**ld.bfd**  
Hard link to ld

**nm**  
Lists the symbols occurring in a given object file

**objcopy**  
Translates one type of object file into another

**objdump**  
Displays information about the given object file, with options controlling the particular information to display; the information shown is useful to programmers who are working on the compilation tools

**ranlib**  
Generates an index of the contents of an archive and stores it in the archive; the index lists all of the symbols defined by archive members that are relocatable object files

**readelf**  
Displays information about ELF type binaries

**size**  
Lists the section sizes and the total size for the given object files

**strings**  
Outputs, for each given file, the sequences of printable characters that are of at least the specified length (defaulting to four); for object files, it prints, by default, only the strings from the initializing and loading sections while for other types of files, it scans the entire file

**strip**  
Discards symbols from object files

**libbfd**  
The Binary File Descriptor library

**libctf**  
The Compat ANSI-C Type Format debugging support library

**libctf-nobfd**  
A libctf variant which does not use libbfd functionality

**libopcodes**  
A library for dealing with opcodes—the “readable text” versions of instructions for the processor; it is used for building utilities like *objdump*
8.19. GMP-6.2.1

The GMP package contains math libraries. These have useful functions for arbitrary precision arithmetic.

Approximate build time: 1.0 SBU
Required disk space: 52 MB

8.19.1. Installation of GMP

**Note**

If you are building for 32-bit x86, but you have a CPU which is capable of running 64-bit code and you have specified CFLAGS in the environment, the configure script will attempt to configure for 64-bits and fail. Avoid this by invoking the configure command below with

\[
\text{ABI=32 ./configure ...}
\]

**Note**

The default settings of GMP produce libraries optimized for the host processor. If libraries suitable for processors less capable than the host's CPU are desired, generic libraries can be created by running the following:

\[
\text{cp -v configfsf.guess config.guess}
\]

\[
\text{cp -v configfsf.sub config.sub}
\]

Prepare GMP for compilation:

\[
./configure --prefix=/usr \\
--enable-cxx \\
--disable-static \\
--docdir=/usr/share/doc/gmp-6.2.1
\]

The meaning of the new configure options:

--enable-cxx
This parameter enables C++ support

--docdir=/usr/share/doc/gmp-6.2.1
This variable specifies the correct place for the documentation.

Compile the package and generate the HTML documentation:

```
made
make html
```

**Important**

The test suite for GMP in this section is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstances.

Test the results:

```
made check 2>&1 | tee gmp-check-log
```
Caution

The code in gmp is highly optimized for the processor where it is built. Occasionally, the code that detects the processor misidentifies the system capabilities and there will be errors in the tests or other applications using the gmp libraries with the message "Illegal instruction". In this case, gmp should be reconfigured with the option --build=x86_64-unknown-linux-gnu and rebuilt.

Ensure that all 197 tests in the test suite passed. Check the results by issuing the following command:

```
awk ';/^PASS:/ {total+=$3} ; END{print total}' gmp-check-log
```

Install the package and its documentation:

```
make install
make install-html
```

8.19.2. Contents of GMP

- **Installed Libraries:** libgmp.so and libgmpxx.so
- **Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/gmp-6.2.1

**Short Descriptions**

- **libgmp**  Contains precision math functions
- **libgmpxx** Contains C++ precision math functions
8.20. MPFR-4.1.0

The MPFR package contains functions for multiple precision math.

Approximate build time: 0.8 SBU
Required disk space: 38 MB

8.20.1. Installation of MPFR

Prepare MPFR for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr        \
   --disable-static     \  
   --enable-thread-safe \  
   --docdir=/usr/share/doc/mpfr-4.1.0
```

Compile the package and generate the HTML documentation:

```
make
make html
```

**Important**
The test suite for MPFR in this section is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstances.

Test the results and ensure that all tests passed:

```
make check
```

Install the package and its documentation:

```
make install
make install-html
```

8.20.2. Contents of MPFR

**Installed Libraries:** libmpfr.so  
**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/mpfr-4.1.0

**Short Descriptions**

libmpfr  Contains multiple-precision math functions
8.21. MPC-1.2.1

The MPC package contains a library for the arithmetic of complex numbers with arbitrarily high precision and correct rounding of the result.

- **Approximate build time:** 0.3 SBU
- **Required disk space:** 22 MB

### 8.21.1. Installation of MPC

Prepare MPC for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr  \
  --disable-static  \
  --docdir=/usr/share/doc/mpc-1.2.1
```

Compile the package and generate the HTML documentation:

```
make
make html
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package and its documentation:

```
make install
make install-html
```

### 8.21.2. Contents of MPC

- **Installed Libraries:** libmpc.so
- **Installed Directory:** /usr/share/doc/mpc-1.2.1

**Short Descriptions**

- **libmpc** Contains complex math functions
8.22. Attr-2.4.48

The attr package contains utilities to administer the extended attributes on filesystem objects.

Approximate build time: less than 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 4.2 MB

8.22.1. Installation of Attr

Prepare Attr for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr  \
--disable-static  \
--sysconfdir=/etc  \
--docdir=/usr/share/doc/attr-2.4.48
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

The tests need to be run on a filesystem that supports extended attributes such as the ext2, ext3, or ext4 filesystems. To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

The shared library needs to be moved to /lib, and as a result the .so file in /usr/lib will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libattr.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ..../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libattr.so) /usr/lib/libattr.so
```

8.22.2. Contents of Attr

Installed programs: attr, getfattr, and setfattr
Installed library: libattr.so
Installed directories: /usr/include/attr and /usr/share/doc/attr-2.4.48

Short Descriptions

- **attr**: Extends attributes on filesystem objects
- **getfattr**: Gets the extended attributes of filesystem objects
- **setfattr**: Sets the extended attributes of filesystem objects
- **libattr**: Contains the library functions for manipulating extended attributes
8.23. Acl-2.2.53

The Acl package contains utilities to administer Access Control Lists, which are used to define more fine-grained discretionary access rights for files and directories.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 2.8 MB

8.23.1. Installation of Acl

Prepare Acl for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr         \
   --disable-static             \
   --libexecdir=/usr/lib        \
   --docdir=/usr/share/doc/acl-2.2.53
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

The Acl tests need to be run on a filesystem that supports access controls after Coreutils has been built with the Acl libraries. If desired, return to this package and run `make check` after Coreutils has been built later in this chapter.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

The shared library needs to be moved to `/lib`, and as a result the `.so` file in `/usr/lib` will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libacl.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libacl.so) /usr/lib/libacl.so
```

8.23.2. Contents of Acl

Installed programs: chacl, getfacl, and setfacl
Installed library: libacl.so
Installed directories: /usr/include/acl and /usr/share/doc/acl-2.2.53

Short Descriptions

- **chacl**: Changes the access control list of a file or directory
- **getfacl**: Gets file access control lists
- **setfacl**: Sets file access control lists
- **libacl**: Contains the library functions for manipulating Access Control Lists
8.24. Libcap-2.48

The Libcap package implements the user-space interfaces to the POSIX 1003.1e capabilities available in Linux kernels. These capabilities are a partitioning of the all powerful root privilege into a set of distinct privileges.

Approximate build time: less than 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 45 MB

8.24.1. Installation of Libcap

Prevent static libraries from being installed:

```
sed -i '/install -m.*STA/d' libcap/Makefile
```

Compile the package:

```
make prefix=/usr lib=lib
```

The meaning of the make option:

```
lib=lib
```

This parameter sets the library directory to /usr/lib rather than /usr/lib64 on x86_64. It has no effect on x86.

To test the results, issue:

```
make test
```

Install the package and make sure the essential libraries are in the correct directory:

```
make prefix=/usr lib=lib install
for libname in cap psx; do
    mv -v /usr/lib/lib${libname}.so.* /lib
    ln -sfv ../../lib/lib${libname}.so.2 /usr/lib/${libname}.so
    chmod -v 755 /lib/lib${libname}.so.2.48
done
```

8.24.2. Contents of Libcap

Installed programs: capsh, getcap, getpcaps, and setcap
Installed library: libcap.so and libpsx.so

Short Descriptions

- **capsh**: A shell wrapper to explore and constrain capability support
- **getcap**: Examines file capabilities
- **getpcaps**: Displays the capabilities on the queried process(es)
- **setcap**: Sets file capabilities
- **libcap**: Contains the library functions for manipulating POSIX 1003.1e capabilities
- **libpsx**: Contains functions to support POSIX semantics for syscalls associated with the pthread library
8.25. Shadow-4.8.1

The Shadow package contains programs for handling passwords in a secure way.

Approximate build time: 0.2 SBU
Required disk space: 45 MB

8.25.1. Installation of Shadow

Note

If you would like to enforce the use of strong passwords, refer to http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/postlfs/cracklib.html for installing CrackLib prior to building Shadow. Then add --with-libcrack to the configure command below.

Disable the installation of the groups program and its man pages, as Coreutils provides a better version. Also, prevent the installation of manual pages that were already installed in Section 8.3, “Man-pages-5.10”:

```
sed -i 's/groups$(EXEEXT) //' src/Makefile.in
find man -name Makefile.in -exec sed -i 's/groups\1 / /'   {} \;
find man -name Makefile.in -exec sed -i 's/getspnam\3 / /' {} \;
find man -name Makefile.in -exec sed -i 's/passwd\5 / /'   {} \;
```

Instead of using the default crypt method, use the more secure SHA-512 method of password encryption, which also allows passwords longer than 8 characters. It is also necessary to change the obsolete /var/spool/mail location for user mailboxes that Shadow uses by default to the /var/mail location used currently:

```
sed -e 's:#ENCRYPT_METHOD DES:ENCRYPT_METHOD SHA512:' \  
   -e 's:/var/spool/mail:/var/mail:' \  
   -i etc/login.defs
```

Note

If you chose to build Shadow with Cracklib support, run the following:

```
sed -i 's:DICTPATH.*:DICTPATH\t/lib/cracklib/pw_dict:' etc/login.defs
```

Make a minor change to make the first group number generated by useradd 1000:

```
sed -i 's/1000/999/' etc/useradd
```

Prepare Shadow for compilation:

```
touch /usr/bin/passwd
./configure --sysconfdir=/etc \  
   --with-group-name-max-length=32
```

The meaning of the configure option:

```
touch /usr/bin/passwd
```

The file /usr/bin/passwd needs to exist because its location is hardcoded in some programs, and the default location if it does not exist is not right.
The maximum user name is 32 characters. Make the maximum group name the same.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 8.25.2. Configuring Shadow

This package contains utilities to add, modify, and delete users and groups; set and change their passwords; and perform other administrative tasks. For a full explanation of what *password shadowing* means, see the doc/HOWTO file within the unpacked source tree. If using Shadow support, keep in mind that programs which need to verify passwords (display managers, FTP programs, pop3 daemons, etc.) must be Shadow-compliant. That is, they need to be able to work with shadowed passwords.

To enable shadowed passwords, run the following command:

```
pwconv
```

To enable shadowed group passwords, run:

```
grpconv
```

Shadow's stock configuration for the `useradd` utility has a few caveats that need some explanation. First, the default action for the `useradd` utility is to create the user and a group of the same name as the user. By default the user ID (UID) and group ID (GID) numbers will begin with 1000. This means if you don't pass parameters to `useradd`, each user will be a member of a unique group on the system. If this behavior is undesirable, you'll need to pass the `-g` parameter to `useradd`. The default parameters are stored in the `/etc/default/useradd` file. You may need to modify two parameters in this file to suit your particular needs.

/`etc/default/useradd` Parameter Explanations

**GROUP=1000**

This parameter sets the beginning of the group numbers used in the `/etc/group` file. You can modify it to anything you desire. Note that `useradd` will never reuse a UID or GID. If the number identified in this parameter is used, it will use the next available number after this. Note also that if you don't have a group 1000 on your system the first time you use `useradd` without the `-g` parameter, you'll get a message displayed on the terminal that says: `useradd: unknown GID 1000`. You may disregard this message and group number 1000 will be used.

**CREATE_MAIL_SPOOL=yes**

This parameter causes `useradd` to create a mailbox file for the newly created user. `useradd` will make the group ownership of this file to the `mail` group with 0660 permissions. If you would prefer that these mailbox files are not created by `useradd`, issue the following command:

```
        sed -i 's/yes/no/' /etc/default/useradd
```

8.25.3. Setting the root password

Choose a password for user root and set it by running:

```
passwd root
```

8.25.4. Contents of Shadow

**Installed programs:**
- chage, chfn, chgpasswd, chpasswd, chsh, expiry, faillog, gpasswd, groupadd, groupdel, groupmems, groupmod, grpck, grpconv, grpunconv, lastlog, login, logoutd, newgidmap, newgrp, newuidmap, newusers, nologin, passwd, pwck, pwconv, pwunconv, sg (link to newgrp), su, useradd, userdel, usermod, vigr (link to vipw), and vipw

**Installed directory:**
/etc/default

### Short Descriptions

- **chage**
  Used to change the maximum number of days between obligatory password changes

- **chfn**
  Used to change a user's full name and other information

- **chgpasswd**
  Used to update group passwords in batch mode

- **chpasswd**
  Used to update user passwords in batch mode

- **chsh**
  Used to change a user's default login shell

- **expiry**
  Checks and enforces the current password expiration policy

- **faillog**
  Is used to examine the log of login failures, to set a maximum number of failures before an account is blocked, or to reset the failure count

- **gpasswd**
  Is used to add and delete members and administrators to groups

- **groupadd**
  Creates a group with the given name

- **groupdel**
  Deletes the group with the given name

- **groupmems**
  Allows a user to administer his/her own group membership list without the requirement of super user privileges.

- **groupmod**
  Is used to modify the given group's name or GID

- **grpck**
  Verifies the integrity of the group files /etc/group and /etc/gshadow

- **grpconv**
  Creates or updates the shadow group file from the normal group file

- **grpunconv**
  Updates /etc/group from /etc/gshadow and then deletes the latter

- **lastlog**
  Reports the most recent login of all users or of a given user

- **login**
  Is used by the system to let users sign on

- **logoutd**
  Is a daemon used to enforce restrictions on log-on time and ports

- **newgidmap**
  Is used to set the gid mapping of a user namespace

- **newgrp**
  Is used to change the current GID during a login session

- **newuidmap**
  Is used to set the uid mapping of a user namespace

- **newusers**
  Is used to create or update an entire series of user accounts

- **nologin**
  Displays a message that an account is not available; it is designed to be used as the default shell for accounts that have been disabled
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>passwd</td>
<td>Is used to change the password for a user or group account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pwck</td>
<td>Verifies the integrity of the password files /etc/passwd and /etc/shadow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pwconv</td>
<td>Creates or updates the shadow password file from the normal password file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pwunconv</td>
<td>Updates /etc/passwd from /etc/shadow and then deletes the latter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sg</td>
<td>Executes a given command while the user's GID is set to that of the given group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su</td>
<td>Runs a shell with substitute user and group IDs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>useradd</td>
<td>Creates a new user with the given name, or updates the default new-user information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userdel</td>
<td>Deletes the given user account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usermod</td>
<td>Is used to modify the given user's login name, User Identification (UID), shell, initial group, home directory, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vigr</td>
<td>Edits the /etc/group or /etc/gshadow files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vipw</td>
<td>Edits the /etc/passwd or /etc/shadow files</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.26. GCC-10.2.0

The GCC package contains the GNU compiler collection, which includes the C and C++ compilers.

Approximate build time: 95 SBU (with tests)
Required disk space: 4.6 GB

8.26.1. Installation of GCC

If building on x86_64, change the default directory name for 64-bit libraries to “lib”:

```bash
case $(uname -m) in
  x86_64)
    sed -e '/m64=/s/lib64/lib/' \
      -i.orig gcc/config/i386/t-linux64
  ;;
esac
```

The GCC documentation recommends building GCC in a dedicated build directory:

```bash
mkdir -v build
cd build
```

Prepare GCC for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr            \
  LD=ld                    \
  --enable-languages=c,c++ \ 
  --disable-multilib      \
  --disable-bootstrap      \
  --with-system-zlib
```

Note that for other programming languages there are some prerequisites that are not yet available. See the BLFS Book GCC page for instructions on how to build all of GCC’s supported languages.

The meaning of the new configure parameters:

- **LD=ld**
  This parameter makes the configure script use the ld installed by the binutils built earlier in this chapter, rather than the cross-built version which would otherwise be used.

- **--with-system-zlib**
  This switch tells GCC to link to the system installed copy of the zlib library, rather than its own internal copy.

Compile the package:

```bash
make
```

**Important**

In this section, the test suite for GCC is considered critical. Do not skip it under any circumstance.

One set of tests in the GCC test suite is known to exhaust the default stack, so increase the stack size prior to running the tests:

```bash
ulimit -s 32768
```
Test the results as a non-privileged user, but do not stop at errors:

```bash
chown -Rv tester .
su tester -c "PATH=$PATH make -k check"
```

To receive a summary of the test suite results, run:

```bash
./contrib/test_summary
```

For only the summaries, pipe the output through `grep -A7 Summ`.


Six tests related to get_time are known to fail. These are apparently related to the en_HK locale.

Additionally the following tests related to the following files are known to fail with glibc-2.33: asan_test.C, co-ret-17-void-ret-coro.C, pr95519-05-gro.C, pr80166.c.

A few unexpected failures cannot always be avoided. The GCC developers are usually aware of these issues, but have not resolved them yet. Unless the test results are vastly different from those at the above URL, it is safe to continue.

Install the package and remove an unneeded directory:

```bash
make install
rm -rf /usr/lib/gcc/$(gcc -dumpmachine)/10.2.0/include-fixed/bits/
```

The GCC build directory is owned by `tester` now and the ownership of the installed header directory (and its content) will be incorrect. Change the ownership to `root` user and group:

```bash
chown -v -R root:root 
/usr/lib/gcc/*/linux-gnu/10.2.0/include{,-fixed}
```

Create a symlink required by the FHS for "historical" reasons.

```bash
ln -sv ../usr/bin/cpp /lib
```

Add a compatibility symlink to enable building programs with Link Time Optimization (LTO):

```bash
ln -sfv ../../libexec/gcc/$(gcc -dumpmachine)/10.2.0/liblto_plugin.so 
/usr/lib/bfd-plugins/
```

Now that our final toolchain is in place, it is important to again ensure that compiling and linking will work as expected. We do this by performing some sanity checks:

```bash
echo 'int main(){}' > dummy.c
cd dummy.c -v -Wl,--verbose &> dummy.log
readelf -l a.out | grep ': /lib'
```

There should be no errors, and the output of the last command will be (allowing for platform-specific differences in the dynamic linker name):

```
[Requesting program interpreter: /lib64/ld-linux-x86-64.so.2]
```

Now make sure that we're setup to use the correct start files:

```bash
grep -o '/usr/lib.*/crt[1in].*succeeded' dummy.log
```
The output of the last command should be:

```
/usr/lib/gcc/x86_64-pc-linux-gnu/10.2.0/../../../../lib/crt1.o succeeded
/usr/lib/gcc/x86_64-pc-linux-gnu/10.2.0/../../../../lib/crti.o succeeded
/usr/lib/gcc/x86_64-pc-linux-gnu/10.2.0/../../../../lib/crtn.o succeeded
```

Depending on your machine architecture, the above may differ slightly. The difference will be the name of the directory after `/usr/lib/gcc`. The important thing to look for here is that `gcc` has found all three `crt*.o` files under the `/usr/lib` directory.

Verify that the compiler is searching for the correct header files:

```
grep -B4 '^ /usr/include' dummy.log
```

This command should return the following output:

```
#include <...> search starts here:
 /usr/lib/gcc/x86_64-pc-linux-gnu/10.2.0/include
 /usr/local/include
 /usr/lib/gcc/x86_64-pc-linux-gnu/10.2.0/include-fixed
 /usr/include
```

Again, the directory named after your target triplet may be different than the above, depending on your system architecture.

Next, verify that the new linker is being used with the correct search paths:

```
grep 'SEARCH.*/usr/lib' dummy.log | sed 's|; |
|g'
```

References to paths that have components with `-linux-gnu` should be ignored, but otherwise the output of the last command should be:

```
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/x86_64-pc-linux-gnu/lib64")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/local/lib64")
SEARCH_DIR("/lib64")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/x86_64-pc-linux-gnu/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/local/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/lib");
```

A 32-bit system may see a few different directories. For example, here is the output from an i686 machine:

```
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/i686-pc-linux-gnu/lib32")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/local/lib32")
SEARCH_DIR("/lib32")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/lib32")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/i686-pc-linux-gnu/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/local/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/lib")
SEARCH_DIR("/usr/lib");
```
Next make sure that we're using the correct libc:

```bash
grep "\!/lib.*/libc.so.6 " dummy.log
```

The output of the last command should be:

```bash
attempt to open /lib/libc.so.6 succeeded
```

Make sure GCC is using the correct dynamic linker:

```bash
grep found dummy.log
```

The output of the last command should be (allowing for platform-specific differences in dynamic linker name):

```bash
found ld-linux-x86-64.so.2 at /lib/ld-linux-x86-64.so.2
```

If the output does not appear as shown above or is not received at all, then something is seriously wrong. Investigate and retrace the steps to find out where the problem is and correct it. Any issues will need to be resolved before continuing with the process.

Once everything is working correctly, clean up the test files:

```bash
rm -v dummy.c a.out dummy.log
```

Finally, move a misplaced file:

```bash
mkdir -pv /usr/share/gdb/auto-load/usr/lib
mv -v /usr/lib/*gdb.py /usr/share/gdb/auto-load/usr/lib
```

### 8.26.2. Contents of GCC

**Installed programs:**
- c++, cc (link to gcc), cpp, g++, gcc, gcc-ar, gcc-nm, gcc-ranlib, gcov, gcov-dump, and gcov-tool

**Installed libraries:**
- libasan.{a,so}, libatomic.{a,so}, libbcc1.so, libgcc.a, libgcc_eh.a, libgcc_s.so, libgcov.a, libgomp.{a,so}, libitm.{a,so}, liblsan.{a,so}, liblto_plugin.so, libquadmath.{a,so}, libssp.{a,so}, libssp_nonshared.a, libstdc++.a, libstdc++.so, libsupc++.a, libtsan.{a,so}, and libubsan.{a,so}

**Installed directories:**
- /usr/include/c++, /usr/lib/gcc, /usr/libexec/gcc, and /usr/share/gcc-10.2.0

**Short Descriptions**

- **c++**  
  The C++ compiler

- **cc**  
  The C compiler

- **cpp**  
  The C preprocessor; it is used by the compiler to expand the `#include`, `#define`, and similar statements in the source files

- **g++**  
  The C++ compiler

- **gcc**  
  The C compiler

- **gcc-ar**  
  A wrapper around `ar` that adds a plugin to the command line. This program is only used to add "link time optimization" and is not useful with the default build options

- **gcc-nm**  
  A wrapper around `nm` that adds a plugin to the command line. This program is only used to add "link time optimization" and is not useful with the default build options
**gcc-ranlib**  
A wrapper around *ranlib* that adds a plugin to the command line. This program is only used to add "link time optimization" and is not useful with the default build options.

**gcov**  
A coverage testing tool; it is used to analyze programs to determine where optimizations will have the most effect.

**gcov-dump**  
Offline gcda and gcno profile dump tool.

**gcov-tool**  
Offline gcda profile processing tool.

**libasan**  
The Address Sanitizer runtime library.

**libatomic**  
GCC atomic built-in runtime library.

**libccl**  
The C preprocessing library.

**libgcc**  
Contains run-time support for *gcc*.

**libgcov**  
This library is linked in to a program when GCC is instructed to enable profiling.

**libgomp**  
GNU implementation of the OpenMP API for multi-platform shared-memory parallel programming in C/C++ and Fortran.

**liblsan**  
The Leak Sanitizer runtime library.

**liblto_plugin**  
GCC's Link Time Optimization (LTO) plugin allows GCC to perform optimizations across compilation units.

**libquadmath**  
GCC Quad Precision Math Library API.

**libssp**  
Contains routines supporting GCC’s stack-smashing protection functionality.

**libstdc++**  
The standard C++ library.

**libstdc++fs**  

**libsupc++**  
Provides supporting routines for the C++ programming language.

**libtsan**  
The Thread Sanitizer runtime library.

**libubsan**  
The Undefined Behavior Sanitizer runtime library.
8.27. Pkg-config-0.29.2

The pkg-config package contains a tool for passing the include path and/or library paths to build tools during the configure and make phases of package installations.

Approximate build time: 0.3 SBU
Required disk space: 30 MB

8.27.1. Installation of Pkg-config

Prepare Pkg-config for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr               
    --with-internal-glib          
    --disable-host-tool          
    --docdir=/usr/share/doc/pkg-config-0.29.2
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

```
--with-internal-glib
This will allow pkg-config to use its internal version of Glib because an external version is not available in LFS.
```

```
--disable-host-tool
This option disables the creation of an undesired hard link to the pkg-config program.
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.27.2. Contents of Pkg-config

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Installed program:</th>
<th>pkg-config</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Installed directory:</td>
<td>/usr/share/doc/pkg-config-0.29.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short Descriptions

pkg-config      Returns meta information for the specified library or package
8.28. Ncurses-6.2

The Ncurses package contains libraries for terminal-independent handling of character screens.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 34 MB

### 8.28.1. Installation of Ncurses

Prepare Ncurses for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr           \
   --mandir=/usr/share/man \
   --with-shared           \
   --without-debug         \
   --without-normal        \
   --enable-pc-files       \
   --enable-widec
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

---

**--enable-widec**

This switch causes wide-character libraries (e.g., `libncursesw.so.6.2`) to be built instead of normal ones (e.g., `libncurses.so.6.2`). These wide-character libraries are usable in both multibyte and traditional 8-bit locales, while normal libraries work properly only in 8-bit locales. Wide-character and normal libraries are source-compatible, but not binary-compatible.

---

**--enable-pc-files**

This switch generates and installs .pc files for pkg-config.

---

**--without-normal**

This switch disables building and installing most static libraries.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package has a test suite, but it can only be run after the package has been installed. The tests reside in the `test/` directory. See the `README` file in that directory for further details.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move the shared libraries to the `/lib` directory, where they are expected to reside:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libncursesw.so.6* /lib
```

Because the libraries have been moved, one symlink points to a non-existent file. Recreate it:

```
ln -sfv ../..lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libncursesw.so) /usr/lib/libncursesw.so
```
Many applications still expect the linker to be able to find non-wide-character Ncurses libraries. Trick such applications into linking with wide-character libraries by means of symlinks and linker scripts:

```bash
for lib in ncurses form panel menu ; do
    rm -vf /usr/lib/lib${lib}.so
    echo "INPUT(-l${lib}w)" > /usr/lib/lib${lib}.so
    ln -sfv ${lib}w.pc /usr/lib/pkgconfig/${lib}.pc
done
```

Finally, make sure that old applications that look for `-lcurses` at build time are still buildable:

```bash
rm -vf /usr/lib/libcursesw.so
echo "INPUT(-lncursesw)" > /usr/lib/libcursesw.so
ln -sfv libncurses.so /usr/lib/libcurses.so
```

Remove a static library that is not handled by configure:

```bash
rm -fv /usr/lib/libncurses++w.a
```

If desired, install the Ncurses documentation:

```bash
mkdir -v /usr/share/doc/ncurses-6.2
cp -v -R doc/* /usr/share/doc/ncurses-6.2
```

### Note

The instructions above don't create non-wide-character Ncurses libraries since no package installed by compiling from sources would link against them at runtime. However, the only known binary-only applications that link against non-wide-character Ncurses libraries require version 5. If you must have such libraries because of some binary-only application or to be compliant with LSB, build the package again with the following commands:

```bash
make distclean
./configure --prefix=/usr
   --with-shared
   --without-normal
   --without-debug
   --without-cxx-binding
   --with-abi-version=5
make sources libs
```

### 8.28.2. Contents of Ncurses

**Installed programs:** `captoinfo` (link to tic), clear, `infocmp`, `infotecap` (link to tic), `ncursesw6-config`, `reset` (link to `tset`), `tabs`, `tic`, `toe`, `tput`, and `tset`

**Installed libraries:** `libcursesw.so` (symlink and linker script to `libncursesw.so`), `libformw.so`, `libmenuw.so`, `libncursesw.so`, `libpanelw.so`, and their non-wide-character counterparts without "w" in the library names.

**Installed directories:** `/usr/share/tabset`, `/usr/share/terminfo`, and `/usr/share/doc/ncurses-6.2`
Short Descriptions

**captoinfo**
Converts a termcap description into a terminfo description

**clear**
Clears the screen, if possible

**infocmp**
Compares or prints out terminfo descriptions

**infotocap**
Converts a terminfo description into a termcap description

**ncursesw6-config**
Provides configuration information for ncurses

**reset**
Reinitializes a terminal to its default values

**tabs**
Clears and sets tab stops on a terminal

**tic**
The terminfo entry-description compiler that translates a terminfo file from source format into the binary format needed for the ncurses library routines [A terminfo file contains information on the capabilities of a certain terminal.]

**toe**
Lists all available terminal types, giving the primary name and description for each

**tput**
Makes the values of terminal-dependent capabilities available to the shell; it can also be used to reset or initialize a terminal or report its long name

**tset**
Can be used to initialize terminals

**libcursesw**
A link to libncursesw

**libncursesw**
Contains functions to display text in many complex ways on a terminal screen; a good example of the use of these functions is the menu displayed during the kernel's `make menuconfig`

**libformw**
Contains functions to implement forms

**libmenuw**
Contains functions to implement menus

**libpanelw**
Contains functions to implement panels
8.29. Sed-4.8

The Sed package contains a stream editor.

Approximate build time: 0.5 SBU
Required disk space: 32 MB

8.29.1. Installation of Sed

Prepare Sed for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin
```

Compile the package and generate the HTML documentation:

```
maker
make html
```

To test the results, issue:

```
chown -Rv tester .
su tester -c "PATH=$PATH make check"
```

Install the package and its documentation:

```
maker install
install -d -m755 /usr/share/doc/sed-4.8
install -m644 doc/sed.html /usr/share/doc/sed-4.8
```

8.29.2. Contents of Sed

Installed program: sed
Installed directory: /usr/share/doc/sed-4.8

Short Descriptions

sed Filters and transforms text files in a single pass
8.30. Psmisc-23.4

The Psmisc package contains programs for displaying information about running processes.

Approximate build time: less than 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 5.7 MB

8.30.1. Installation of Psmisc

Prepare Psmisc for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Finally, move the `killall` and `fuser` programs to the location specified by the FHS:

```
mv -v /usr/bin/fuser   /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/killall /bin
```

8.30.2. Contents of Psmisc

Installed programs: fuser, killall, peekfd, prtstat, pslog, pstree, and pstree.x11 (link to pstree)

Short Descriptions

- `fuser` Reports the Process IDs (PIDs) of processes that use the given files or file systems
- `killall` Kills processes by name; it sends a signal to all processes running any of the given commands
- `peekfd` Peek at file descriptors of a running process, given its PID
- `prtstat` Prints information about a process
- `pslog` Reports current logs path of a process
- `pstree` Displays running processes as a tree
- `pstree.x11` Same as `pstree`, except that it waits for confirmation before exiting
8.31. Gettext-0.21

The Gettext package contains utilities for internationalization and localization. These allow programs to be compiled with NLS (Native Language Support), enabling them to output messages in the user's native language.

Approximate build time: 2.9 SBU
Required disk space: 240 MB

8.31.1. Installation of Gettext

Prepare Gettext for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr    
    --disable-static 
    --docdir=/usr/share/doc/gettext-0.21
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results (this takes a long time, around 3 SBUs), issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
chmod -v 0755 /usr/lib/preloadable_libintl.so
```

8.31.2. Contents of Gettext

**Installed programs:** autopoint, envsubst, gettext, gettext.sh, gettextize, msgattrib, msgcat, msgcmp, msgcomm, msgconv, msgen, msgexec, msgfilter, msgfmt, msggrep, msginit, msgmerge, msgunfmt, msguniq, ngettext, recode-sr-latin, and xgettext

**Installed libraries:** libasprintf.so, libgettextlib.so, libgettextpo.so, libgettextsrc.so, libtextstyle.so, and preloadable_libintl.so

**Installed directories:** /usr/lib/gettext, /usr/share/doc/gettext-0.21, /usr/share/gettext, and /usr/share/gettext-0.19.8

**Short Descriptions**

- **autopoint**
  Copies standard Gettext infrastructure files into a source package

- **envsubst**
  Substitutes environment variables in shell format strings

- **gettext**
  Translates a natural language message into the user's language by looking up the translation in a message catalog

- **gettext.sh**
  Primarily serves as a shell function library for gettext

- **gettextize**
  Copies all standard Gettext files into the given top-level directory of a package to begin internationalizing it

- **msgattrib**
  Filters the messages of a translation catalog according to their attributes and manipulates the attributes
msgcat | Concatenates and merges the given .po files
msgcmp | Compares two .po files to check that both contain the same set of msgid strings
msgcomm | Finds the messages that are common to the given .po files
msgconv | Converts a translation catalog to a different character encoding
msgen | Creates an English translation catalog
msgexec | Applies a command to all translations of a translation catalog
msgfilter | Applies a filter to all translations of a translation catalog
msgfmt | Generates a binary message catalog from a translation catalog
msggrep | Extracts all messages of a translation catalog that match a given pattern or belong to
some given source files
msginit | Creates a new .po file, initializing the meta information with values from the user's environment
msgmerge | Combines two raw translations into a single file
msgunfmt | Decompiles a binary message catalog into raw translation text
msguniq | Unifies duplicate translations in a translation catalog
ngettext | Displays native language translations of a textual message whose grammatical form depends on a number
recode-sr-latin | Recodes Serbian text from Cyrillic to Latin script
xgettext | Extracts the translatable message lines from the given source files to make the first translation template
libasprintf | defines the autosprintf class, which makes C formatted output routines usable in C++ programs, for use with the <string> strings and the <iostream> streams
libgettextlib | a private library containing common routines used by the various Gettext programs; these are not intended for general use
libgettextpo | Used to write specialized programs that process .po files; this library is used when the standard applications shipped with Gettext (such as msgcomm, msgcmp, msgattrib, and msgen) will not suffice
libgettextsrc | A private library containing common routines used by the various Gettext programs; these are not intended for general use
libtextstyle | Text styling library
preloadable_libintl | A library, intended to be used by LD_PRELOAD that assists libintl in logging untranslated messages

146
8.32. Bison-3.7.5

The Bison package contains a parser generator.

**Approximate build time:** 6.4 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 56 MB

8.32.1. Installation of Bison

Prepare Bison for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --docdir=/usr/share/doc/bison-3.7.5
```

Compile the package:

```
made
```

To test the results (about 5.5 SBU), issue:

```
made check
```

Install the package:

```
made install
```

8.32.2. Contents of Bison

**Installed programs:** bison and yacc  
**Installed library:** liby.a  
**Installed directory:** /usr/share/bison

**Short Descriptions**

**bison** Generates, from a series of rules, a program for analyzing the structure of text files; Bison is a replacement for Yacc (Yet Another Compiler Compiler)

**yacc** A wrapper for **bison**, meant for programs that still call **yacc** instead of **bison**; it calls **bison** with the **-y** option

**liby** The Yacc library containing implementations of Yacc-compatible **yyerror** and **main** functions; this library is normally not very useful, but POSIX requires it
8.33. Grep-3.6

The Grep package contains programs for searching through the contents of files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.8 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 38 MB

### 8.33.1. Installation of Grep

Prepare Grep for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --bindir=/bin
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

### 8.33.2. Contents of Grep

**Installed programs:** egrep, fgrep, and grep

**Short Descriptions**

- `egrep`  
  Prints lines matching an extended regular expression

- `fgrep`  
  Prints lines matching a list of fixed strings

- `grep`  
  Prints lines matching a basic regular expression
8.34. Bash-5.1

The Bash package contains the Bourne-Again SHell.

Approximate build time: 1.6 SBU
Required disk space: 51 MB

8.34.1. Installation of Bash

First, fix a race condition if using multiple cores:

```
sed -i '/^bashline.o:.*shmchar.o$/a bashline.o: ${DEFDIR}/builtext.h' Makefile.in
```

Prepare Bash for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr                    \    
   --docdir=/usr/share/doc/bash-5.1 \       
   --without-bash-malloc \                
   --with-installed-readline
```

The meaning of the new configure option:

```
--with-installed-readline
```

This option tells Bash to use the `readline` library that is already installed on the system rather than using its own readline version.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Skip down to “Install the package” if not running the test suite.

To prepare the tests, ensure that the tester user can write to the sources tree:

```
chown -Rv tester .
```

Now, run the tests as the tester user:

```
su tester << EOF
PATH=$PATH make tests < $(tty)
EOF
```

Install the package and move the main executable to /bin:

```
make install
mv -vf /usr/bin/bash /bin
```

Run the newly compiled bash program (replacing the one that is currently being executed):

```
exec /bin/bash --login +h
```

Note

The parameters used make the bash process an interactive login shell and continues to disable hashing so that new programs are found as they become available.
8.34.2. Contents of Bash

**Installed programs:** bash, bashbug, and sh (link to bash)

**Installed directory:** /usr/include/bash, /usr/lib/bash, and /usr/share/doc/bash-5.1

**Short Descriptions**

**bash**
A widely-used command interpreter; it performs many types of expansions and substitutions on a given command line before executing it, thus making this interpreter a powerful tool

**bashbug**
A shell script to help the user compose and mail standard formatted bug reports concerning bash

**sh**
A symlink to the bash program; when invoked as sh, bash tries to mimic the startup behavior of historical versions of sh as closely as possible, while conforming to the POSIX standard as well
8.35. Libtool-2.4.6

The Libtool package contains the GNU generic library support script. It wraps the complexity of using shared libraries in a consistent, portable interface.

Approximate build time: 1.6 SBU
Required disk space: 43 MB

8.35.1. Installation of Libtool

Prepare Libtool for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
made
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Note

The test time for libtool can be reduced significantly on a system with multiple cores. To do this, append `TESTSUITEFLAGS=-j<N>` to the line above. For instance, using `-j4` can reduce the test time by over 60 percent.

Five tests are known to fail in the LFS build environment due to a circular dependency, but all tests pass if rechecked after automake is installed.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Remove an useless static library:

```
rm -fv /usr/lib/libltdl.a
```

8.35.2. Contents of Libtool

- **Installed programs:** libtool and libtoolize
- **Installed libraries:** libltdl.so
- **Installed directories:** /usr/include/libltdl and /usr/share/libtool

Short Descriptions

- **libtool**: Provides generalized library-building support services
- **libtoolize**: Provides a standard way to add libtool support to a package
- **libltdl**: Hides the various difficulties of dlopening libraries
8.36. GDBM-1.19

The GDBM package contains the GNU Database Manager. It is a library of database functions that use extensible hashing and works similar to the standard UNIX dbm. The library provides primitives for storing key/data pairs, searching and retrieving the data by its key and deleting a key along with its data.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 11 MB

8.36.1. Installation of GDBM

Prepare GDBM for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr  
   --disable-static  
   --enable-libgdbm-compat
```

The meaning of the configure option:

--enable-libgdbm-compat

This switch enables building the libgdbm compatibility library. Some packages outside of LFS may require the older DBM routines it provides.

Compile the package:

```bash
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```bash
make check
```

One test, VERSION, is known to fail.

Install the package:

```bash
make install
```

8.36.2. Contents of GDBM

**Installed programs:** gdbm_dump, gdbm_load, and gdbmtool  
**Installed libraries:** libgdbm.so and libgdbm_compat.so

**Short Descriptions**

- **gdbm_dump** Dumps a GDBM database to a file
- **gdbm_load** Recreates a GDBM database from a dump file
- **gdbmtool** Tests and modifies a GDBM database
- **libgdbm** Contains functions to manipulate a hashed database
- **libgdbm_compat** Compatibility library containing older DBM functions
8.37. Gperf-3.1

Gperf generates a perfect hash function from a key set.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 6.4 MB

8.37.1. Installation of Gperf

Prepare Gperf for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr --docdir=/usr/share/doc/gperf-3.1
```

Compile the package:

```
maker
```

The tests are known to fail if running multiple simultaneous tests (-j option greater than 1). To test the results, issue:

```
maker -j1 check
```

Install the package:

```
maker install
```

8.37.2. Contents of Gperf

**Installed program:** gperf  
**Installed directory:** /usr/share/doc/gperf-3.1

Short Descriptions

- **gperf** Generates a perfect hash from a key set
8.38. Expat-2.2.10

The Expat package contains a stream oriented C library for parsing XML.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 14 MB

8.38.1. Installation of Expat

Prepare Expat for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr    \
  --disable-static    \
  --docdir=/usr/share/doc/expat-2.2.10
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

If desired, install the documentation:

```
install -v -m644 doc/*.{html,png,css} /usr/share/doc/expat-2.2.10
```

8.38.2. Contents of Expat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Installed program:</th>
<th>xmlwf</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Installed libraries:</td>
<td>libexpat.so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installed directory:</td>
<td>/usr/share/doc/expat-2.2.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>xmlwf</th>
<th>Is a non-validating utility to check whether or not XML documents are well formed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>libexpat</td>
<td>Contains API functions for parsing XML</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.39. Inetutils-2.0

The Inetutils package contains programs for basic networking.

**Approximate build time:** 0.3 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 31 MB

8.39.1. Installation of Inetutils

Prepare Inetutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr        
 --localstatedir=/var           
 --disable-logger                
 --disable-whois                 
 --disable-rcp                   
 --disable-rexec                 
 --disable-rlogin                
 --disable-rsh                   
 --disable-servers
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--disable-logger
This option prevents Inetutils from installing the logger program, which is used by scripts to pass messages to the System Log Daemon. Do not install it because Util-linux installs a more recent version.

--disable-whois
This option disables the building of the Inetutils whois client, which is out of date. Instructions for a better whois client are in the BLFS book.

--disable-r*
These parameters disable building obsolete programs that should not be used due to security issues. The functions provided by these programs can be provided by the openssh package in the BLFS book.

--disable-servers
This disables the installation of the various network servers included as part of the Inetutils package. These servers are deemed not appropriate in a basic LFS system. Some are insecure by nature and are only considered safe on trusted networks. Note that better replacements are available for many of these servers.
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

**Note**

One test, libls.sh, may fail in the initial chroot environment but will pass if the test is rerun after the LFS system is complete. One test, ping-localhost.sh, will fail if the host system does not have ipv6 capability.
Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move some programs so they are available if `/usr` is not accessible:

```
mv -v /usr/bin/{hostname,ping,ping6,traceroute} /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/ifconfig /sbin
```

8.39.2. Contents of Inetutils

**Installed programs:** dnsdomainname, ftp, ifconfig, hostname, ping, ping6, talk, telnet, tftp, and traceroute

**Short Descriptions**

- **dnsdomainname**: Show the system's DNS domain name
- **ftp**: Is the file transfer protocol program
- **hostname**: Reports or sets the name of the host
- **ifconfig**: Manages network interfaces
- **ping**: Sends echo-request packets and reports how long the replies take
- **ping6**: A version of **ping** for IPv6 networks
- **talk**: Is used to chat with another user
- **telnet**: An interface to the TELNET protocol
- **tftp**: A trivial file transfer program
- **traceroute**: Traces the route your packets take from the host you are working on to another host on a network, showing all the intermediate hops (gateways) along the way
8.40. Perl-5.32.1

The Perl package contains the Practical Extraction and Report Language.

Approximate build time: 10 SBU
Required disk space: 222 MB

8.40.1. Installation of Perl

This version of Perl now builds the Compress::Raw::Zlib and Compress::Raw::BZip2 modules. By default Perl will use an internal copy of the sources for the build. Issue the following command so that Perl will use the libraries installed on the system:

```bash
export BUILD_ZLIB=False
export BUILD_BZIP2=0
```

To have full control over the way Perl is set up, you can remove the “-des” options from the following command and hand-pick the way this package is built. Alternatively, use the command exactly as below to use the defaults that Perl auto-detects:

```bash
sh Configure -des
-Dprefix=/usr
-Dvendorprefix=/usr
-Dprivlib=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/core_perl
-Darchlib=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/core_perl
-Dsitelib=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/site_perl
-Dsitearch=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/site_perl
-Dvendorlib=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/vendor_perl
-Dvendorarch=/usr/lib/perl5/5.32/vendor_perl
-Dman1dir=/usr/share/man/man1
-Dman3dir=/usr/share/man/man3
-Dpager="/usr/bin/less -isR"
-Duseshrplib
-Dusethreads
```

The meaning of the configure options:

- **-Dvendorprefix=/usr**
  This ensures **perl** knows how to tell packages where they should install their perl modules.

- **-Dpager="/usr/bin/less -isR"**
  This ensures that **less** is used instead of **more**.

- **-Dman1dir=/usr/share/man/man1 -Dman3dir=/usr/share/man/man3**
  Since Groff is not installed yet, **Configure** thinks that we do not want man pages for Perl. Issuing these parameters overrides this decision.

- **-Duseshrplib**
  Build a shared libperl needed by some perl modules.

- **-Dusethreads**
  Build perl with support for threads.
These settings define where Perl is looking for installed modules. The LFS editors chose to put them in a directory structure based on the Major.Minor version of Perl (5.32) which allows upgrading Perl to newer Patch levels (5.32.1) without the need to reinstall all of the modules again.

Compile the package:

```make
make
```

To test the results (approximately 11 SBU), issue:

```make
make test
```

Install the package and clean up:

```make
make install
unset BUILD_ZLIB BUILD_BZIP2
```

### 8.40.2. Contents of Perl

**Installed programs:**
- corelist, cpan, enc2xs, encguess, h2ph, h2xs, instmodsh, json_pp, libnetcfg, perl, perl5.32.1 (hard link to perl), perlbug, perldoc, perlvp, perlthanks (hard link to perlbug), piconv, pl2pm, pod2html, pod2man, pod2text, pod2usage, podchecker, podselect, prove, pta, pptardiff, ptargrep, shasum, splain, xsubpp, and zipdetails

**Installed libraries:**
Many which cannot all be listed here

**Installed directory:**
/usr/lib/perl5

### Short Descriptions

- **corelist**: A commandline frontend to Module::CoreList
- **cpan**: Interact with the Comprehensive Perl Archive Network (CPAN) from the command line
- **enc2xs**: Builds a Perl extension for the Encode module from either Unicode Character Mappings or Tcl Encoding Files
- **encguess**: Guess the encoding type of one or several files
- **h2ph**: Converts .h C header files to .ph Perl header files
- **h2xs**: Converts .h C header files to Perl extensions
- **instmodsh**: Shell script for examining installed Perl modules, and can create a tarball from an installed module
- **json_pp**: Converts data between certain input and output formats
- **libnetcfg**: Can be used to configure the libnet Perl module
- **perl**: Combines some of the best features of C, *sed*, *awk* and *sh* into a single swiss-army language
- **perl5.32.1**: A hard link to *perl*
- **perlbug**: Used to generate bug reports about Perl, or the modules that come with it, and mail them
- **perldoc**: Displays a piece of documentation in pod format that is embedded in the Perl installation tree or in a Perl script
- **perlvp**: The Perl Installation Verification Procedure; it can be used to verify that Perl and its libraries have been installed correctly
perlthanks  Used to generate thank you messages to mail to the Perl developers
piconv   A Perl version of the character encoding converter iconv
pl2pm    A rough tool for converting Perl4 .pl files to Perl5 .pm modules
pod2html Converts files from pod format to HTML format
pod2man  Converts pod data to formatted *roff input
pod2text Converts pod data to formatted ASCII text
pod2usage Prints usage messages from embedded pod docs in files
podchecker Checks the syntax of pod format documentation files
podselect Displays selected sections of pod documentation
prove    Command line tool for running tests against the Test::Harness module
ptar     A tar-like program written in Perl
ptardiff A Perl program that compares an extracted archive with an unextracted one
ptargrep A Perl program that applies pattern matching to the contents of files in a tar archive
shasum   Prints or checks SHA checksums
splain   Is used to force verbose warning diagnostics in Perl
xsubpp   Converts Perl XS code into C code
zipdetails Displays details about the internal structure of a Zip file
8.41. XML::Parser-2.46

The XML::Parser module is a Perl interface to James Clark's XML parser, Expat.

Approximate build time: less than 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 2.4 MB

8.41.1. Installation of XML::Parser

Prepare XML::Parser for compilation:

```
perl Makefile.PL
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make test
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.41.2. Contents of XML::Parser

Installed module: Expat.so

Short Descriptions

**Expat** provides the Perl Expat interface
8.42. Intltool-0.51.0

The Intltool is an internationalization tool used for extracting translatable strings from source files.

Approximate build time: less than 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 1.5 MB

8.42.1. Installation of Intltool

First fix a warning that is caused by perl-5.22 and later:

```
$ sed -i 's:\${:\$\{:' intltool-update.in
```

Note

The above regular expression looks unusual because of all the backslashes. What it does is add a backslash before the right brace character in the sequence `\${` resulting in `\$\{`.

Prepare Intltool for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
install -v -Dm644 doc/I18N-HOWTO /usr/share/doc/intltool-0.51.0/I18N-HOWTO
```

8.42.2. Contents of Intltool

Installed programs: intltool-extract, intltool-merge, intltool-prepare, intltool-update, and intltoolize
Installed directories: /usr/share/doc/intltool-0.51.0 and /usr/share/intltool

Short Descriptions

- **intltoolize**: Prepares a package to use Intltool
- **intltool-extract**: Generates header files that can be read by gettext
- **intltool-merge**: Merges translated strings into various file types
- **intltool-prepare**: Updates pot files and merges them with translation files
- **intltool-update**: Updates the po template files and merges them with the translations
8.43. Autoconf-2.71

The Autoconf package contains programs for producing shell scripts that can automatically configure source code.

**Approximate build time:** less than 0.1 SBU (about 7.2 SBU with tests)
**Required disk space:** 24 MB

8.43.1. Installation of Autoconf

Prepare Autoconf for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.43.2. Contents of Autoconf

**Installed programs:** autoconf, autoheader, autom4te, autoreconf, autoscan, autoupdate, and ifnames

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/autoconf

**Short Descriptions**

- **autoconf**: Produces shell scripts that automatically configure software source code packages to adapt to many kinds of Unix-like systems; the configuration scripts it produces are independent—running them does not require the autoconf program
- **autoheader**: A tool for creating template files of C `#define` statements for configure to use
- **autom4te**: A wrapper for the M4 macro processor
- **autoreconf**: Automatically runs autoconf, autoheader, alocal, automake, gettextize, and libtoolize in the correct order to save time when changes are made to autoconf and automake template files
- **autoscan**: Helps to create a configure.in file for a software package; it examines the source files in a directory tree, searching them for common portability issues, and creates a configure.scan file that serves as a preliminary configure.in file for the package
- **autoupdate**: Modifies a configure.in file that still calls autoconf macros by their old names to use the current macro names
- **ifnames**: Helps when writing configure.in files for a software package; it prints the identifiers that the package uses in C preprocessor conditionals [If a package has already been set up to have some portability, this program can help determine what configure needs to check for. It can also fill in gaps in a configure.in file generated by autoscan.]
8.44. Automake-1.16.3

The Automake package contains programs for generating Makefiles for use with Autoconf.

Approximate build time: less than 0.1 SBU (about 9.1 SBU with tests)
Required disk space: 115 MB

8.44.1. Installation of Automake

Fix a failing test:

```bash
sed -i "s/'/etags/" t/tags-lisp-space.sh
```

Prepare Automake for compilation:

```bash
./configure --prefix=/usr --docdir=/usr/share/doc/automake-1.16.3
```

Compile the package:

```bash
make
```

Using the -j4 make option speeds up the tests, even on systems with only one processor, due to internal delays in individual tests. To test the results, issue:

```bash
make -j4 check
```

The tests t/subobj.sh, t/deprecated-acinit.sh, and t/init.sh are known to fail in the LFS environment.

Install the package:

```bash
make install
```

8.44.2. Contents of Automake

**Installed programs:** aclocal, aclocal-1.16 (hard linked with aclocal), automake, and automake-1.16 (hard linked with automake)

**Installed directories:** /usr/share/aclocal-1.16, /usr/share/automake-1.16, and /usr/share/doc/automake-1.16.3

Short Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aclocal</td>
<td>Generates aclocal.m4 files based on the contents of configure.in files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aclocal-1.16</td>
<td>A hard link to aclocal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>automake</td>
<td>A tool for automatically generating Makefile.in files from Makefile.am files [To create all the Makefile.in files for a package, run this program in the top-level directory. By scanning the configure.in file, it automatically finds each appropriate Makefile.am file and generates the corresponding Makefile.in file.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>automake-1.16</td>
<td>A hard link to automake</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.45. Kmod-28

The Kmod package contains libraries and utilities for loading kernel modules

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 13 MB

8.45.1. Installation of Kmod

Prepare Kmod for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr          
  --bindir=/bin          
  --sysconfdir=/etc      
  --with-rootlibdir=/lib 
  --with-xz             
  --with-zstd           
  --with-zlib
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--with-xz, --with-zlib, --with-zstd
```
These options enable Kmod to handle compressed kernel modules.

```
--with-rootlibdir=/lib
```
This option ensures different library related files are placed in the correct directories.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite that can be run in the LFS chroot environment. At a minimum the git program is required and several tests will not run outside of a git repository.

Install the package and create symlinks for compatibility with Module-Init-Tools (the package that previously handled Linux kernel modules):

```
make install
for target in depmod insmod lsmod modinfo modprobe rmmod; do
  ln -sfv ..:/bin/kmod /sbin/$target
done

ln -sfv kmod /bin/lsmod
```

8.45.2. Contents of Kmod

Installed programs: depmod (link to kmod), insmod (link to kmod), kmod, lsmod (link to kmod), modinfo (link to kmod), modprobe (link to kmod), and rmmod (link to kmod)

Installed library: libkmod.so

Short Descriptions

**depmod** Creates a dependency file based on the symbols it finds in the existing set of modules; this dependency file is used by **modprobe** to automatically load the required modules
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>insmod</td>
<td>Installs a loadable module in the running kernel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kmod</td>
<td>Loads and unloads kernel modules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lsmod</td>
<td>Lists currently loaded modules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modinfo</td>
<td>Examines an object file associated with a kernel module and displays any information that it can glean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modprobe</td>
<td>Uses a dependency file, created by depmod, to automatically load relevant modules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rmmod</td>
<td>Unloads modules from the running kernel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libkmod</td>
<td>This library is used by other programs to load and unload kernel modules</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.46. Libelf from Elfutils-0.183

Libelf is a library for handling ELF (Executable and Linkable Format) files.

Approximate build time: 0.9 SBU
Required disk space: 121 MB

8.46.1. Installation of Libelf

Libelf is part of elfutils-0.183 package. Use the elfutils-0.183.tar.bz2 as the source tarball.

Prepare Libelf for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr                \
   --disable-debuginfo                 \
   --enable-libdebuginfo=dummy        \
   --libdir=/lib                      
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install only Libelf:

```
make -C libelf install
install -vm644 config/libelf.pc /usr/lib/pkgconfig
rm /lib/libelf.a
```

8.46.2. Contents of Libelf

Installed Library: libelf.so (symlink) and libelf-0.183.so
Installed Directory: /usr/include/elfutils

Short Descriptions

libelf Contains API functions to handle ELF object files
8.47. Libffi-3.3

The Libffi library provides a portable, high level programming interface to various calling conventions. This allows a programmer to call any function specified by a call interface description at run time.

Approximate build time: 1.9 SBU
Required disk space: 10 MB

8.47.1. Installation of Libffi

Note
Similar to GMP, libffi builds with optimizations specific to the processor in use. If building for another system, export CFLAGS and CXXFLAGS to specify a generic build for your architecture. If this is not done, all applications that link to libffi will trigger Illegal Operation Errors.

Prepare libffi for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-static --with-gcc-arch=native
```

The meaning of the configure option:

```
--with-gcc-arch=native
```
Ensure GCC optimizes for the current system. If this is not specified, the system is guessed and the code generated may not be correct for some systems. If the generated code will be copied from the native system to a less capable system, use the less capable system as a parameter. For details about alternative system types, see the x86 options in the GCC manual.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.47.2. Contents of Libffi

Installed library: libffi.so

Short Descriptions

libffi contains the foreign function interface API functions
8.48. OpenSSL-1.1.1j

The OpenSSL package contains management tools and libraries relating to cryptography. These are useful for providing cryptographic functions to other packages, such as OpenSSH, email applications, and web browsers (for accessing HTTPS sites).

Approximate build time: 2.2 SBU
Required disk space: 154 MB

8.48.1. Installation of OpenSSL

Prepare OpenSSL for compilation:

```
./config --prefix=/usr         \
  --openssldir=/etc/ssl        \
  --libdir=lib                 \
  shared                      \
  zlib-dynamic
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make test
```

One test 30-test_afalg.t is known to fail on some kernel configurations (it apparently assumes certain unspecified crypto options have been selected).

Install the package:

```
sed -i '/INSTALL_LIBS/s/libcrypto.a libssl.a//' Makefile
make MANSUFFIX=ssl install
```

Add the version to the documentation directory name, to be consistent with other packages:

```
mv -v /usr/share/doc/openssl /usr/share/doc/openssl-1.1.1j
```

If desired, install some additional documentation:

```
cp -vfr doc/* /usr/share/doc/openssl-1.1.1j
```

8.48.2. Contents of OpenSSL

- **Installed programs:** c_rehash and openssl
- **Installed libraries:** libcrypto.so and libssl.so
- **Installed directories:** /etc/ssl, /usr/include/openssl, /usr/lib/engines and /usr/share/doc/openssl-1.1.1j

**Short Descriptions**

- **c_rehash** is a Perl script that scans all files in a directory and adds symbolic links to their hash values
- **openssl** is a command-line tool for using the various cryptography functions of OpenSSL's crypto library from the shell. It can be used for various functions which are documented in **man 1 openssl**
libcrypto.so implements a wide range of cryptographic algorithms used in various Internet standards. The services provided by this library are used by the OpenSSL implementations of SSL, TLS and S/MIME, and they have also been used to implement OpenSSH, OpenPGP, and other cryptographic standards.

libssl.so implements the Transport Layer Security (TLS v1) protocol. It provides a rich API, documentation on which can be found by running `man 3 ssl`. 
8.49. Python-3.9.2

The Python 3 package contains the Python development environment. It is useful for object-oriented programming, writing scripts, prototyping large programs, or developing entire applications.

Approximate build time: 2.8 SBU
Required disk space: 294 MB

8.49.1. Installation of Python 3

Prepare Python for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr       \n   --enable-shared       \n   --with-system-expat \n   --with-system-ffi    \n   --with-ensurepip=yes
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--with-system-expat
   This switch enables linking against system version of Expat.

--with-system-ffi
   This switch enables linking against system version of libffi.

--with-ensurepip=yes
   This switch enables building pip and setuptools packaging programs.
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make test
```

Some tests requiring a network connection or additional packages are skipped. The test named test_normalization is known to fail. For more comprehensive results, the tests can be rerun when Python 3 is reinstalled in BLFS.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

If desired, install the preformatted documentation:

```
install -v -dm755 /usr/share/doc/python-3.9.2/html
```

```
tar --strip-components=1 \n   --no-same-owner    \n   --no-same-permissions \n   -C /usr/share/doc/python-3.9.2/html \n   -xvf ../python-3.9.2-docs-html.tar.bz2
```

The meaning of the documentation install commands:

`--no-same-owner` and `--no-same-permissions`

Ensure the installed files have the correct ownership and permissions. Without these options, using tar will install the package files with the upstream creator's values.

8.49.2. Contents of Python 3

**Installed Programs:** 2to3, idle3, pip3, pydoc3, python3, and python3-config
**Installed Library:** libpython3.9.so and libpython3.so
**Installed Directories:** /usr/include/python3.9, /usr/lib/python3, and /usr/share/doc/python-3.9.2

**Short Descriptions**

2to3 is a Python program that reads Python 2.x source code and applies a series of fixes to transform it into valid Python 3.x code

idle3 is a wrapper script that opens a Python aware GUI editor. For this script to run, you must have installed Tk before Python so that the Tkinter Python module is built

pip3 The package installer for Python. You can use pip to install packages from Python Package Index and other indexes

pydoc3 is the Python documentation tool

python3 is an interpreted, interactive, object-oriented programming language
8.50. Ninja-1.10.2

Ninja is a small build system with a focus on speed.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 79 MB

8.50.1. Installation of Ninja

When run, ninja normally runs a maximum number of processes in parallel. By default this is the number of cores on the system plus two. In some cases this can overheat a CPU or run a system out of memory. If run from the command line, passing a -jN parameter will limit the number of parallel processes, but some packages embed the execution of ninja and do not pass a -j parameter.

Using the optional procedure below allows a user to limit the number of parallel processes via an environment variable, NINJAJOBS. For example, setting:

```bash
export NINJAJOBS=4
```

will limit ninja to four parallel processes.

If desired, add the capability to use the environment variable NINJAJOBS by running:

```bash
sed -i '/int Guess/a \  
  int j = 0;\  
  char* jobs = getenv( "NINJAJOBS" );\  
  if ( jobs != NULL ) j = atoi( jobs );\  
  if ( j > 0 ) return j;\  
  src/ninja.cc
```

Build Ninja with:

```bash
python3 configure.py --bootstrap
```

The meaning of the build option:

`--bootstrap`

This parameter forces ninja to rebuild itself for the current system.

To test the results, issue:

```bash
./ninja ninja_test
./ninja_test --gtest_filter=-SubprocessTest.SetWithLots
```

Install the package:

```bash
install -vm755 ninja /usr/bin/
install -vDm644 misc/bash-completion /usr/share/bash-completion/completions/ninja
install -vDm644 misc/zsh-completion /usr/share/zsh/site-functions/_ninja
```

8.50.2. Contents of Ninja

Installed programs: ninja
Short Descriptions

ninja is the Ninja build system
8.51. Meson-0.57.1

Meson is an open source build system meant to be both extremely fast and as user friendly as possible.

Approximate build time: less than 0.1 SBU  
Required disk space: 37 MB

8.51.1. Installation of Meson

Compile Meson with the following command:

```
python3 setup.py build
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
python3 setup.py install --root=dest  
cp -rv dest/* /
```

The meaning of the install parameters:

```
--root=dest
```

By default `python3 setup.py install` installs various files (such as man pages) into Python Eggs. With a specified root location, `setup.py` installs these files into a standard hierarchy. Then the hierarchy can just be copied to the standard location.

8.51.2. Contents of Meson

Installed programs: meson  
Installed directory: /usr/lib/python3.9/site-packages/meson-0.57.1-py3.9.egg-info and /usr/lib/python3.9/site-packages/mesonbuild

Short Descriptions

meson  A high productivity build system
8.52. Coreutils-8.32

The Coreutils package contains utilities for showing and setting the basic system characteristics.

**Approximate build time:** 2.5 SBU
**Required disk space:** 164 MB

### 8.52.1. Installation of Coreutils

POSIX requires that programs from Coreutils recognize character boundaries correctly even in multibyte locales. The following patch fixes this non-compliance and other internationalization-related bugs.

```
patch -Np1 -i ../coreutils-8.32-i18n-1.patch
```

**Note**

In the past, many bugs were found in this patch. When reporting new bugs to Coreutils maintainers, please check first if they are reproducible without this patch.

Suppress a test which on some machines can loop forever:

```
sed -i '/test.lock/s/^/#/' gnulib-tests/gnulib.mk
```

Now prepare Coreutils for compilation:

```
autoreconf -fiv
FORCE_UNSAFE_CONFIGURE=1 ./configure
    --prefix=/usr
    --enable-no-install-program=kill,uptime
```

The meaning of the configure options:

- **autoreconf**

  The patch for internationalization has modified the building system of the package, so the configuration files have to be regenerated.

- **FORCE_UNSAFE_CONFIGURE=1**

  This environment variable allows the package to be built as the root user.

- **--enable-no-install-program=kill,uptime**

  The purpose of this switch is to prevent Coreutils from installing binaries that will be installed by other packages later.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

Skip down to “Install the package” if not running the test suite.

Now the test suite is ready to be run. First, run the tests that are meant to be run as user root:

```
make NON_ROOT_USERNAME=tester check-root
```
We're going to run the remainder of the tests as the tester user. Certain tests require that the user be a member of more than one group. So that these tests are not skipped, add a temporary group and make the user tester a part of it:

```bash
echo "dummy:x:102:tester" >> /etc/group
```

Fix some of the permissions so that the non-root user can compile and run the tests:

```bash
chown -Rv tester .
```

Now run the tests:

```bash
su tester -c "PATH=$PATH make RUN_EXPENSIVE_TESTS=yes check"
```

The test-getlogin test is known to fail in the LFS chroot environment.

Remove the temporary group:

```bash
sed -i '/dummy/d' /etc/group
```

Install the package:

```bash
make install
```

Move programs to the locations specified by the FHS:

```bash
mv -v /usr/bin/{cat,chgrp,chmod,chown,cp,date,dd,df,echo} /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/{false,ln,ls,mkdir,mknod,mv,pwd,rm} /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/{rmdir,stty,sync,true,uname} /bin
mv -v /usr/bin/chroot /usr/sbin
mv -v /usr/share/man/man1/chroot.1 /usr/share/man/man8/chroot.8
sed -i 's/"1"/"8"/g' /usr/share/man/man8/chroot.8
mv -v /usr/bin/{head,nice,sleep,touch} /bin
```

### 8.52.2. Contents of Coreutils

**Installed programs:**

- [ ]
- b2sum, base32, base64, basename, basenc, cat, chcon, chgrp, chmod, chown, chroot, cksum, comm, cp, csplit, cut, date, dd, df, dir, dircolors, dirname, du, echo, env, expand, expr, factor, false, fmt, fold, groups, head, hostid, id, install, join, link, ln, logname, ls, md5sum, mkdir, mkfifo, mktemp, mv, nice, nl, nohup, nproc, numfmt, od, paste, pathchk, pinky, pr, printenv, printf, ptx, pwd, realpath, rm, rmdir, runcon, seq, sha1sum, sha224sum, sha256sum, sha384sum, sha512sum, shred, shuf, sleep, sort, split, stat, stdbuf, stty, sum, sync, tac, tail, tee, test, timeout, touch, tr, true, truncate, tsort, tty, uname, unexpand, uniq, unlink, users, vdir, wc, who, whoami, and yes

**Installed library:**

- libstdbuf.so (in /usr/libexec/coreutils)

**Installed directory:**

- /usr/libexec/coreutils

**Short Descriptions**

- [ ] Is an actual command, /usr/bin/[], that is a synonym for the test command.
- **base32** Encodes and decodes data according to the base32 specification (RFC 4648)
- **base64** Encodes and decodes data according to the base64 specification (RFC 4648)
b2sum          Prints or checks BLAKE2 (512-bit) checksums
basename       Strips any path and a given suffix from a file name
basenc         Encodes or decodes data using various algorithms
cat            Concatenates files to standard output
chcon          Changes security context for files and directories
chgrp          Changes the group ownership of files and directories
chmod          Changes the permissions of each file to the given mode; the mode can be either a symbolic
               representation of the changes to make or an octal number representing the new permissions
chown          Changes the user and/or group ownership of files and directories
chroot         Runs a command with the specified directory as the / directory
cksum          Prints the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) checksum and the byte counts of each specified file
comm           Compares two sorted files, outputting in three columns the lines that are unique and the lines that are common
cp             Copies files
csplit         Splits a given file into several new files, separating them according to given patterns or line numbers and outputting the byte count of each new file
cut            Prints sections of lines, selecting the parts according to given fields or positions
date           Displays the current time in the given format, or sets the system date
dd             Copies a file using the given block size and count, while optionally performing conversions on it
df             Reports the amount of disk space available (and used) on all mounted file systems, or only on the file systems holding the selected files
dir            Lists the contents of each given directory (the same as the ls command)
dircolors      Outputs commands to set the LS_COLOR environment variable to change the color scheme used by ls
dirname        Strips the non-directory suffix from a file name
du             Reports the amount of disk space used by the current directory, by each of the given directories (including all subdirectories) or by each of the given files
echo           Displays the given strings
env            Runs a command in a modified environment
expand         Converts tabs to spaces
expr           Evaluates expressions
factor         Prints the prime factors of all specified integer numbers
false          Does nothing, unsuccessfully; it always exits with a status code indicating failure
fmt            Reformats the paragraphs in the given files
fold           Wraps the lines in the given files
groups         Reports a user's group memberships
head           Prints the first ten lines (or the given number of lines) of each given file
hostid         Reports the numeric identifier (in hexadecimal) of the host
**id** Reports the effective user ID, group ID, and group memberships of the current user or specified user

**install** Copies files while setting their permission modes and, if possible, their owner and group

**join** Joins the lines that have identical join fields from two separate files

**link** Creates a hard link with the given name to a file

**ln** Makes hard links or soft (symbolic) links between files

**logname** Reports the current user's login name

**ls** Lists the contents of each given directory

**md5sum** Reports or checks Message Digest 5 (MD5) checksums

**mkdir** Creates directories with the given names

**mkfifo** Creates First-In, First-Outs (FIFOs), a "named pipe" in UNIX parlance, with the given names

**mknod** Creates device nodes with the given names; a device node is a character special file, a block special file, or a FIFO

**mktemp** Creates temporary files in a secure manner; it is used in scripts

**mv** Moves or renames files or directories

**nice** Runs a program with modified scheduling priority

**nl** Numbers the lines from the given files

**nohup** Runs a command immune to hangups, with its output redirected to a log file

**nproc** Prints the number of processing units available to a process

**numfmt** Converts numbers to or from human-readable strings

**od** Dumps files in octal and other formats

**paste** Merges the given files, joining sequentially corresponding lines side by side, separated by tab characters

**pathchk** Checks if file names are valid or portable

**pinky** Is a lightweight finger client; it reports some information about the given users

**pr** Paginates and columnates files for printing

**printenv** Prints the environment

**printf** Prints the given arguments according to the given format, much like the C printf function

**ptx** Produces a permuted index from the contents of the given files, with each keyword in its context

**pwd** Reports the name of the current working directory

**readlink** Reports the value of the given symbolic link

**realpath** Prints the resolved path

**rm** Removes files or directories

**rmdir** Removes directories if they are empty

**runcon** Runs a command with specified security context

**seq** Prints a sequence of numbers within a given range and with a given increment

**sha1sum** Prints or checks 160-bit Secure Hash Algorithm 1 (SHA1) checksums

**sha224sum** Prints or checks 224-bit Secure Hash Algorithm checksums
sha256sum | Prints or checks 256-bit Secure Hash Algorithm checksums
sha384sum | Prints or checks 384-bit Secure Hash Algorithm checksums
sha512sum | Prints or checks 512-bit Secure Hash Algorithm checksums
shred    | Overwrites the given files repeatedly with complex patterns, making it difficult to recover the data
shuf     | Shuffles lines of text
sleep    | Pauses for the given amount of time
sort     | Sorts the lines from the given files
split    | Splits the given file into pieces, by size or by number of lines
stat     | Displays file or filesystem status
stdbuf   | Runs commands with altered buffering operations for its standard streams
stty     | Sets or reports terminal line settings
sum      | Prints checksum and block counts for each given file
sync     | Flushes file system buffers; it forces changed blocks to disk and updates the super block
tac      | Concatenates the given files in reverse
tail     | Prints the last ten lines (or the given number of lines) of each given file
tee      | Reads from standard input while writing both to standard output and to the given files
test     | Compares values and checks file types
timeout  | Runs a command with a time limit
touch    | Changes file timestamps, setting the access and modification times of the given files to the current time; files that do not exist are created with zero length
tr        | Translates, squeezes, and deletes the given characters from standard input
true     | Does nothing, successfully; it always exits with a status code indicating success
truncate  | Shrinks or expands a file to the specified size
tsort     | Performs a topological sort; it writes a completely ordered list according to the partial ordering in a given file
tty      | Reports the file name of the terminal connected to standard input
uname     | Reports system information
unexpand  | Converts spaces to tabs
uniq      | Discards all but one of successive identical lines
unlink    | Removes the given file
users     | Reports the names of the users currently logged on
vdir      | Is the same as `ls -l`
wc        | Reports the number of lines, words, and bytes for each given file, as well as a total line when more than one file is given
who       | Reports who is logged on
whoami    | Reports the user name associated with the current effective user ID
yes       | Repeatedly outputs “y” or a given string until killed
libstdbuf  Library used by stdbuf
8.53. Check-0.15.2

Check is a unit testing framework for C.

**Approximate build time:** 0.1 SBU (about 4.2 SBU with tests)
**Required disk space:** 12 MB

8.53.1. Installation of Check

Prepare Check for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-static
```

Build the package:

```
make
```

Compilation is now complete. To run the Check test suite, issue the following command:

```
make check
```

Note that the Check test suite may take a relatively long (up to 4 SBU) time.

Install the package:

```
make docdir=/usr/share/doc/check-0.15.2 install
```

8.53.2. Contents of Check

**Installed program:** checkmk

**Installed library:** libcheck.so

**Short Descriptions**

- **checkmk**  
  Awk script for generating C unit tests for use with the Check unit testing framework

- **libcheck.{a,so}**  
  Contains functions that allow Check to be called from a test program
8.54. Diffutils-3.7

The Diffutils package contains programs that show the differences between files or directories.

Approximate build time: 0.4 SBU
Required disk space: 33 MB

8.54.1. Installation of Diffutils

Prepare Diffutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.54.2. Contents of Diffutils

Installed programs: cmp, diff, diff3, and sdiff

Short Descriptions

- **cmp**: Compares two files and reports whether or in which bytes they differ
- **diff**: Compares two files or directories and reports which lines in the files differ
- **diff3**: Compares three files line by line
- **sdiff**: Merges two files and interactively outputs the results
8.55. Gawk-5.1.0

The Gawk package contains programs for manipulating text files.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU
**Required disk space:** 45 MB

8.55.1. Installation of Gawk

First, ensure some unneeded files are not installed:

```
sed -i 's/extras//' Makefile.in
```

Prepare Gawk for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

If desired, install the documentation:

```
mkdir -v /usr/share/doc/gawk-5.1.0
cp -v doc/{awkforai.txt,*.{eps,pdf,jpg}} /usr/share/doc/gawk-5.1.0
```

8.55.2. Contents of Gawk

**Installed programs:** awk (link to gawk), gawk, and awk-5.1.0
**Installed libraries:** filefuncs.so, fnmatch.so, fork.so, inplace.so, intdiv.so, ordchr.so, readdir.so, readfile.so, revoutput.so, revtwoway.so, rwarray.so, and time.so (all in /usr/lib/gawk)
**Installed directories:** /usr/lib/gawk, /usr/libexec/awk, /usr/share/awk, and /usr/share/doc/gawk-5.1.0

Short Descriptions

**awk**  
A link to gawk

**gawk**  
A program for manipulating text files; it is the GNU implementation of awk

**gawk-5.1.0**  
A hard link to gawk
8.56. Findutils-4.8.0

The Findutils package contains programs to find files. These programs are provided to recursively search through a directory tree and to create, maintain, and search a database (often faster than the recursive find, but is unreliable if the database has not been recently updated).

**Approximate build time:** 0.9 SBU
**Required disk space:** 55 MB

8.56.1. Installation of Findutils

Prepare Findutils for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --localstatedir=/var/lib/locate
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--localstatedir
```

This option changes the location of the locate database to be in /var/lib/locate, which is FHS-compliant.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
chown -Rv tester .
su tester -c "PATH=$PATH make check"
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Some packages in BLFS and beyond expect the find program in /bin, so make sure it's placed there:

```
mv -v /usr/bin/find /bin
sed -i 's|find:=${BINDIR}|find:=${BINDIR}/find|=}/bin|' /usr/bin/updatedb
```

8.56.2. Contents of Findutils

**Installed programs:** find, locate, updatedb, and xargs
**Installed directory:** /var/lib/locate

**Short Descriptions**

find

Searches given directory trees for files matching the specified criteria

locate

Searches through a database of file names and reports the names that contain a given string or match a given pattern

updatedb

Updates the locate database; it scans the entire file system (including other file systems that are currently mounted, unless told not to) and puts every file name it finds into the database

xargs

Can be used to apply a given command to a list of files
8.57. Groff-1.22.4

The Groff package contains programs for processing and formatting text.

Approximate build time: 0.5 SBU
Required disk space: 96 MB

8.57.1. Installation of Groff

Groff expects the environment variable PAGE to contain the default paper size. For users in the United States, PAGE=letter is appropriate. Elsewhere, PAGE=A4 may be more suitable. While the default paper size is configured during compilation, it can be overridden later by echoing either “A4” or “letter” to the /etc/papersize file.

Prepare Groff for compilation:

```
PAGE=<paper_size> ./configure --prefix=/usr
```

This package does not support parallel build. Compile the package:

```
make -j1
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.57.2. Contents of Groff

Installed programs:

- addftinfo
- afmtodit
- chem
- eqn
- eqn2graph
- gdiffmk
- glilypond
- gperl
- gpinyin
- grap2graph
- grn
- grodvi
- groff
- groffer
- grotty
- hpftodit
- indxbib
- lkbib
- lookbib
- mmroff
- neqn
- nroff
- pdfmom
- pdfroff
- pfbtops
- pic
- pic2graph
- post-grohtml
- preconv
- pre-grohtml
- refer
- roff2dvi
- roff2html
- roff2pdf
- roff2ps
- roff2text
- roff2x
- soelim
- tbl
- tfmtodit
- troff

Installed directories:

- /usr/lib/groff
- /usr/share/doc/groff-1.22.4
- /usr/share/groff

Short Descriptions

- **addftinfo**: Reads a troff font file and adds some additional font-metric information that is used by the groff system.
- **afmtodit**: Creates a font file for use with groff and grofs.
- **chem**: Groff preprocessor for producing chemical structure diagrams.
- **eqn**: Compiles descriptions of equations embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by troff.
- **eqn2graph**: Converts a troff EQN (equation) into a cropped image.
- **gdiffmk**: Marks differences between groff/nroff/troff files.
- **glilypond**: Transforms sheet music written in the lilypond language into the groff language.
- **gperl**: Preprocessor for groff, allowing addition of perl code into groff files.
- **gpinyin**: Preprocessor for groff, allowing addition of Chinese European-like language Pinyin into groff files.
grap2graph  Converts a grap diagram into a cropped bitmap image
grn       A groff preprocessor for gremlin files
grodvi    A driver for groff that produces TeX dvi format
groff     A front-end to the groff document formatting system; normally, it runs the troff program and a post-processor appropriate for the selected device
groffer   Displays groff files and man pages on x and tty terminals
grog      Reads files and guesses which of the groff options \texttt{-e, -man, -me, -mm, -ms, -p, -s, and -t} are required for printing files, and reports the groff command including those options
groblp    Is a groff driver for Canon CAPSL printers (LBP-4 and LBP-8 series laser printers)
grojl4    Is a driver for groff that produces output in PCL5 format suitable for an HP LaserJet 4 printer
gropdf    Translates the output of GNU troff to PDF
grops     Translates the output of GNU troff to PostScript
grotty    Translates the output of GNU troff into a form suitable for typewriter-like devices
hpftodit  Creates a font file for use with \texttt{groff -Tlj4} from an HP-tagged font metric file
indxbib   Creates an inverted index for the bibliographic databases with a specified file for use with refer, lookbib, and lkbib
lkbib     Searches bibliographic databases for references that contain specified keys and reports any references found
lookbib   Prints a prompt on the standard error (unless the standard input is not a terminal), reads a line containing a set of keywords from the standard input, searches the bibliographic databases in a specified file for references containing those keywords, prints any references found on the standard output, and repeats this process until the end of input
mmroff    A simple preprocessor for groff
neqn      Formats equations for American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) output
nroff     A script that emulates the nroff command using groff
pdfmom    Is a wrapper around groff that facilitates the production of PDF documents from files formatted with the mom macros.
pdfroff   Creates pdf documents using groff
pfbtops   Translates a PostScript font in .pfb format to ASCII
pic       Compiles descriptions of pictures embedded within troff or TeX input files into commands understood by TeX or troff
pic2graph  Converts a PIC diagram into a cropped image
post-grohtml Translates the output of GNU troff to HTML
preconv   Converts encoding of input files to something GNU troff understands
pre-grohtml Translates the output of GNU troff to HTML
refer     Copies the contents of a file to the standard output, except that lines between ./ and ./ are interpreted as citations, and lines between .R1 and .R2 are interpreted as commands for how citations are to be processed
roff2dvi  Transforms roff files into DVI format
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>roff2html</td>
<td>Transforms roff files into HTML format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roff2pdf</td>
<td>Transforms roff files into PDFs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roff2ps</td>
<td>Transforms roff files into ps files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roff2text</td>
<td>Transforms roff files into text files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roff2x</td>
<td>Transforms roff files into other formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soelim</td>
<td>Reads files and replaces lines of the form <code>.so file</code> by the contents of the mentioned <code>file</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tbl</td>
<td>Compiles descriptions of tables embedded within troff input files into commands that are understood by <code>troff</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tfmtodit</td>
<td>Creates a font file for use with <code>groff -Tdvi</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>troff</td>
<td>Is highly compatible with Unix <code>troff</code>; it should usually be invoked using the <code>groff</code> command, which will also run preprocessors and post-processors in the appropriate order and with the appropriate options</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.58. GRUB-2.04

The GRUB package contains the GRand Unified Bootloader.

Approximate build time: 0.7 SBU
Required disk space: 154 MB

8.58.1. Installation of GRUB

First, fix an issue introduced by binutils-2.36:

```
sed "s/gold-version/& -R .note.gnu.property/" \  
-i Makefile.in grub-core/Makefile.in
```

Prepare GRUB for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr \  
--sbindir=/sbin \  
--sysconfdir=/etc \  
--disable-efiemu \  
--disable-werror
```

The meaning of the new configure options:

```
--disable-werror
```
This allows the build to complete with warnings introduced by more recent Flex versions.

```
--disable-efiemu
```
This option minimizes what is built by disabling a feature and testing programs not needed for LFS.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
mv -v /etc/bash_completion.d/grub /usr/share/bash-completion/completions
```

Using GRUB to make your LFS system bootable will be discussed in Section 10.4, “Using GRUB to Set Up the Boot Process”.

8.58.2. Contents of GRUB

- **Installed programs:**
  - grub-bios-setup
  - grub-editenv
  - grub-file
  - grub-fstest
  - grub-glue-efi
  - grub-install
  - grub-kbdcomp
  - grub-macbless
  - grub-menulst2cfg
  - grub-mkconfig
  - grub-mkimage
  - grub-mklayout
  - grub-mknetdir
  - grub-mkpasswd-pbkdf2
  - grub-mkrelpath
  - grub-mkrescue
  - grub-mkstandalone
  - grub-ofpathname
  - grub-probe
  - grub-reboot
  - grub-render-label
  - grub-script-check
  - grub-set-default
  - grub-sparc64-setup
  - grub-syslinux2cfg

- **Installed directories:**
  - /usr/lib/grub
  - /etc/grub.d
  - /usr/share/grub
  - /boot/grub (when grub-install is first run)

**Short Descriptions**

- **grub-bios-setup:** Is a helper program for grub-install
grub-editenv  A tool to edit the environment block
grub-file  Checks if FILE is of the specified type.
grub-fstest  Tool to debug the filesystem driver
grub-glue-efi  Processes ia32 and amd64 EFI images and glues them according to Apple format.
grub-install  Install GRUB on your drive
grub-kbdcomp  Script that converts an xkb layout into one recognized by GRUB
grub-macbless  Mac-style bless on HFS or HFS+ files
grub-menulst2cfg  Converts a GRUB Legacy menu.lst into a grub.cfg for use with GRUB 2
grub-mkconfig  Generate a grub config file
grub-mkimage  Make a bootable image of GRUB
grub-mklayout  Generates a GRUB keyboard layout file
grub-mknetdir  Prepares a GRUB netboot directory
grub-mkpasswd-pbkdf2  Generates an encrypted PBKDF2 password for use in the boot menu
grub-mkrelpath  Makes a system pathname relative to its root
grub-mkrescue  Make a bootable image of GRUB suitable for a floppy disk or CDROM/DVD
grub-mkstandalone  Generates a standalone image
grub-ofpathname  Is a helper program that prints the path of a GRUB device
grub-probe  Probe device information for a given path or device
grub-reboot  Sets the default boot entry for GRUB for the next boot only
grub-render-label  Render Apple .disk_label for Apple Macs
grub-script-check  Checks GRUB configuration script for syntax errors
grub-set-default  Sets the default boot entry for GRUB
grub-sparc64-setup  Is a helper program for grub-setup
grub-syslinux2cfg  Transform a syslinux config file into grub.cfg format
8.59. Less-563

The Less package contains a text file viewer.

Approximate build time: less than 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 4.1 MB

8.59.1. Installation of Less

Prepare Less for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --sysconfdir=/etc
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--sysconfdir=/etc
```
This option tells the programs created by the package to look in /etc for the configuration files.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not come with a test suite.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.59.2. Contents of Less

Installed programs: less, lessecho, and lesskey

Short Descriptions

- **less**: A file viewer or pager; it displays the contents of the given file, letting the user scroll, find strings, and jump to marks
- **lessecho**: Needed to expand meta-characters, such as * and ?, in filenames on Unix systems
- **lesskey**: Used to specify the key bindings for less
8.60. Gzip-1.10

The Gzip package contains programs for compressing and decompressing files.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 19 MB

8.60.1. Installation of Gzip

Prepare Gzip for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Move a program that needs to be on the root filesystem:

```
mv -v /usr/bin/gzip /bin
```

8.60.2. Contents of Gzip

Installed programs: gunzip, gzexe, gzip, uncompress (hard link with gunzip), zcat, zcmp, zdiff, zegrep, zfgrep, zforce, zgrep, zless, zmore, and znew

Short Descriptions

gunzip  Decompresses gzipped files
gzexe   Creates self-decompressing executable files
gzip    Compresses the given files using Lempel-Ziv (LZ77) coding
uncompress  Decompresses compressed files
zcat    Decompresses the given gzipped files to standard output
zcmp    Runs cmp on gzipped files
zdif    Runs diff on gzipped files
zegrep  Runs egrep on gzipped files
zfgrep  Runs fgrep on gzipped files
zforce  Forces a .gz extension on all given files that are gzipped files, so that gzip will not compress them again; this can be useful when file names were truncated during a file transfer
zgrep   Runs grep on gzipped files
zless   Runs less on gzipped files
zmore  Runs more on gzipped files
znew  Re-compresses files from compress format to gzip format—.Z to .gz
8.61. IPRoute2-5.10.0

The IPRoute2 package contains programs for basic and advanced IPV4-based networking.

**Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU

**Required disk space:** 15 MB

8.61.1. Installation of IPRoute2

The **arpd** program included in this package will not be built since it is dependent on Berkeley DB, which is not installed in LFS. However, a directory for **arpd** and a man page will still be installed. Prevent this by running the commands below. If the **arpd** binary is needed, instructions for compiling Berkeley DB can be found in the BLFS Book at [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/server/db.html](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/server/db.html).

```
sed -i /ARPD/d Makefile
rm -fv man/man8/arpd.8
```

It is also necessary to disable building two modules that require [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/postlfs/iptables.html](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/postlfs/iptables.html).

```
sed -i 's/.m_ipt.o//' tc/Makefile
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does not have a working test suite.

Install the package:

```
make DOCDIR=/usr/share/doc/iproute2-5.10.0 install
```

8.61.2. Contents of IPRoute2

**Installed programs:** bridge, ctstat (link to lnstat), genl, ifcfg, ifstat, ip, lnstat, nstat, routef, routel, rtacct, rtmon, rtrp, rtstat (link to lnstat), ss, and tc

**Installed directories:** /etc/iproute2, /usr/lib/tc, and /usr/share/doc/iproute2-5.10.0

**Short Descriptions**

- **bridge**: Configures network bridges
- **ctstat**: Connection status utility
- **genl**: Generic netlink utility frontend
- **ifcfg**: A shell script wrapper for the `ip` command [Note that it requires the **arping** and **rdisk** programs from the iputils package found at [http://www skbuff.net/iputils/](http://www skbuff.net/iputils/)]
- **ifstat**: Shows the interface statistics, including the amount of transmitted and received packets by interface
- **ip**: The main executable. It has several different functions:
  - `ip link <device>` allows users to look at the state of devices and to make changes
  - `ip addr` allows users to look at addresses and their properties, add new addresses, and delete old ones
  - `ip neighbor` allows users to look at neighbor bindings and their properties, add new neighbor entries, and delete old ones
**ip rule** allows users to look at the routing policies and change them

**ip route** allows users to look at the routing table and change routing table rules

**ip tunnel** allows users to look at the IP tunnels and their properties, and change them

**ip maddr** allows users to look at the multicast addresses and their properties, and change them

**ip mroute** allows users to set, change, or delete the multicast routing

**ip monitor** allows users to continuously monitor the state of devices, addresses and routes

**Instat** Provides Linux network statistics; it is a generalized and more feature-complete replacement for the old **rtstat** program

**nstat** Shows network statistics

**routef** A component of **ip route**. This is for flushing the routing tables

**routel** A component of **ip route**. This is for listing the routing tables

**rtacct** Displays the contents of `/proc/net/rt_acct`

**rtmon** Route monitoring utility

**rtpr** Converts the output of **ip -o** back into a readable form

**rtstat** Route status utility

**ss** Similar to the **netstat** command; shows active connections

**tc** Traffic Controlling Executable; this is for Quality Of Service (QOS) and Class Of Service (COS) implementations

**tc qdisc** allows users to setup the queueing discipline

**tc class** allows users to setup classes based on the queueing discipline scheduling

**tc estimator** allows users to estimate the network flow into a network

**tc filter** allows users to setup the QOS/COS packet filtering

**tc policy** allows users to setup the QOS/COS policies
8.62. Kbd-2.4.0

The Kbd package contains key-table files, console fonts, and keyboard utilities.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 33 MB

8.62.1. Installation of Kbd

The behaviour of the backspace and delete keys is not consistent across the keymaps in the Kbd package. The following patch fixes this issue for i386 keymaps:

```
patch -Np1 -i ../kbd-2.4.0-backspace-1.patch
```

After patching, the backspace key generates the character with code 127, and the delete key generates a well-known escape sequence.

Remove the redundant `resizecons` program (it requires the defunct svgalib to provide the video mode files - for normal use `setfont` sizes the console appropriately) together with its manpage.

```
sed -i '/RESIZECONS_PROGS=/s/yes/no/' configure
sed -i 's/resizecons.8 // ' docs/man/man8/Makefile.in
```

Prepare Kbd for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr --disable-vlock
```

The meaning of the configure option:

```
--disable-vlock
This option prevents the vlock utility from being built because it requires the PAM library, which isn't available in the chroot environment.
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Note

For some languages (e.g., Belarusian) the Kbd package doesn't provide a useful keymap where the stock “by” keymap assumes the ISO-8859-5 encoding, and the CP1251 keymap is normally used. Users of such languages have to download working keymaps separately.

If desired, install the documentation:

```
mkdir -v /usr/share/doc/kbd-2.4.0
cp -R -v docs/doc/* /usr/share/doc/kbd-2.4.0
```
8.62.2. Contents of Kbd

Installed programs: chvt, deallocvt, dumpkeys, fgconsole, getkeycodes, kbdinfo, kbd_mode, kbdrate, loadkeys, loadunimap, mapscrn, openvt, psfaddtable (link to psfxtable), psfgettable (link to psfxtable), psfstripable (link to psfxtable), psfxtable, setfont, setkeycodes, setleds, setmetamode, setvtrgb, showconsolefont, showkey, unicode_start, and unicode_stop

Installed directories: /usr/share/consolefonts, /usr/share/consoletrans, /usr/share/keymaps, /usr/share/doc/kbd-2.4.0, and /usr/share/unimaps

Short Descriptions

chvt Changes the foreground virtual terminal
deallocvt Deallocates unused virtual terminals
dumpkeys Dumps the keyboard translation tables
fgconsole Prints the number of the active virtual terminal
getkeycodes Prints the kernel scancode-to-keycode mapping table
kbdinfo Obtains information about the status of a console
kbd_mode Reports or sets the keyboard mode
kbdrate Sets the keyboard repeat and delay rates
loadkeys Loads the keyboard translation tables
loadunimap Loads the kernel unicode-to-font mapping table
mapscrn An obsolete program that used to load a user-defined output character mapping table into the console driver; this is now done by setfont
openvt Starts a program on a new virtual terminal (VT)
psfaddtable Adds a Unicode character table to a console font
psfgettable Extracts the embedded Unicode character table from a console font
psfstripable Removes the embedded Unicode character table from a console font
psfxtable Handles Unicode character tables for console fonts
setfont Changes the Enhanced Graphic Adapter (EGA) and Video Graphics Array (VGA) fonts on the console
setkeycodes Loads kernel scancode-to-keycode mapping table entries; this is useful if there are unusual keys on the keyboard
setleds Sets the keyboard flags and Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs)
setmetamode Defines the keyboard meta-key handling
setvtrrgb Sets the console color map in all virtual terminals
showconsolefont Shows the current EGA/VGA console screen font
showkey Reports the scancodes, keycodes, and ASCII codes of the keys pressed on the keyboard
unicode_start Puts the keyboard and console in UNICODE mode [Don't use this program unless your keymap file is in the ISO-8859-1 encoding. For other encodings, this utility produces incorrect results.]
unicode_stop Reverts keyboard and console from UNICODE mode
8.63. Libpipeline-1.5.3

The Libpipeline package contains a library for manipulating pipelines of subprocesses in a flexible and convenient way.

Approximate build time: 0.1 SBU
Required disk space: 9.3 MB

8.63.1. Installation of Libpipeline

Prepare Libpipeline for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.63.2. Contents of Libpipeline

Installed library: libpipeline.so

Short Descriptions

libpipeline  This library is used to safely construct pipelines between subprocesses
8.64. Make-4.3

The Make package contains a program for controlling the generation of executables and other non-source files of a package from source files.

Approximate build time: 0.6 SBU
Required disk space: 14 MB

8.64.1. Installation of Make

Prepare Make for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.64.2. Contents of Make

Installed program: make

Short Descriptions

make  Automatically determines which pieces of a package need to be (re)compiled and then issues the relevant commands
8.65. Patch-2.7.6

The Patch package contains a program for modifying or creating files by applying a “patch” file typically created by the `diff` program.

- **Approximate build time:** 0.2 SBU
- **Required disk space:** 12 MB

8.65.1. Installation of Patch

Prepare Patch for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.65.2. Contents of Patch

**Installed program:** `patch`

Short Descriptions

- **patch** Modifies files according to a patch file (A patch file is normally a difference listing created with the `diff` program. By applying these differences to the original files, `patch` creates the patched versions.)
8.66. Man-DB-2.9.4

The Man-DB package contains programs for finding and viewing man pages.

**Approximate build time:** 0.4 SBU

**Required disk space:** 40 MB

8.66.1. Installation of Man-DB

Prepare Man-DB for compilation:

```
sed -i '/find/s@/usr@@' init/systemd/man-db.service.in

./configure --prefix=/usr
   --docdir=/usr/share/doc/man-db-2.9.4
   --sysconfdir=/etc
   --disable-setuid
   --enable-cache-owner=bin
   --with-browser=/usr/bin/lynx
   --with-vgrind=/usr/bin/vgrind
   --with-grap=/usr/bin/grap
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
sed -i '/find/s@/usr@@' init/systemd/man-db.service.in
```

This changes a hardcoded path to the `find` utility, which we install in `/bin`.

```
--disable-setuid
```

This disables making the `man` program setuid to user `man`.

```
--enable-cache-owner=bin
```

This makes the system-wide cache files be owned by user `bin`.

```
--with-vgrind=...
```

These three parameters are used to set some default programs. `lynx` is a text-based web browser (see BLFS for installation instructions), `vgrind` converts program sources to Groff input, and `grap` is useful for typesetting graphs in Groff documents. The `vgrind` and `grap` programs are not normally needed for viewing manual pages. They are not part of LFS or BLFS, but you should be able to install them yourself after finishing LFS if you wish to do so.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

8.66.2. Non-English Manual Pages in LFS

The following table shows the character set that Man-DB assumes manual pages installed under `/usr/share/man/` will be encoded with. In addition to this, Man-DB correctly determines if manual pages installed in that directory are UTF-8 encoded.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language (code)</th>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Language (code)</th>
<th>Encoding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Danish (da)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Croatian (hr)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German (de)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Hungarian (hu)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English (en)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Japanese (ja)</td>
<td>EUC-JP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish (es)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Korean (ko)</td>
<td>EUC-KR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estonian (et)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Lithuanian (lt)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finnish (fi)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Latvian (lv)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French (fr)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Macedonian (mk)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irish (ga)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Polish (pl)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galician (gl)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Romanian (ro)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indonesian (id)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Russian (ru)</td>
<td>KOI8-R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icelandic (is)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Slovak (sk)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian (it)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Slovenian (sl)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norwegian (nb)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Serbian Latin (sr@latin)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norwegian (nn)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Turkish (tr)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norwegian (no)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Ukrainian (uk)</td>
<td>KOI8-U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portuguese (pt)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Vietnamese (vi)</td>
<td>TCVN5712-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swedish (sv)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-1</td>
<td>Simplified Chinese (zh_CN)</td>
<td>G BK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belarusian (be)</td>
<td>CP1251</td>
<td>Simplified Chinese, Singapore (zh_SG)</td>
<td>GBK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgarian (bg)</td>
<td>CP1251</td>
<td>Traditional Chinese, Hong Kong (zh_HK)</td>
<td>BIG5HKSCS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czech (cs)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-2</td>
<td>Traditional Chinese (zh_TW)</td>
<td>BIG5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek (el)</td>
<td>ISO-8859-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Manual pages in languages not in the list are not supported.

### 8.66.3. Contents of Man-DB

**Installed programs:** accessdb, apropos (link to whatis), catman, lexgrog, man, mandb, manpath, and whatis  
**Installed libraries:** libman.so and libmandb.so (both in /usr/lib/man-db)  
**Installed directories:** /usr/lib/man-db, /usr/libexec/man-db, and /usr/share/doc/man-db-2.9.4

**Short Descriptions**

**accessdb**  
Dumps the whatis database contents in human-readable form
**apropos**  Searches the **whatis** database and displays the short descriptions of system commands that contain a given string

**catman**  Creates or updates the pre-formatted manual pages

**lexgrog**  Displays one-line summary information about a given manual page

**man**  Formats and displays the requested manual page

**mandb**  Creates or updates the **whatis** database

**manpath**  Displays the contents of $MANPATH or (if $MANPATH is not set) a suitable search path based on the settings in man.conf and the user's environment

**whatis**  Searches the **whatis** database and displays the short descriptions of system commands that contain the given keyword as a separate word

**libman**  Contains run-time support for **man**

**libmandb**  Contains run-time support for **man**
8.67. Tar-1.34

The Tar package provides the ability to create tar archives as well as perform various other kinds of archive manipulation. Tar can be used on previously created archives to extract files, to store additional files, or to update or list files which were already stored.

Approximate build time: 2.0 SBU
Required disk space: 41 MB

8.67.1. Installation of Tar

Prepare Tar for compilation:

```bash
FORCE_UNSAFE_CONFIGURE=1 \ 
./configure --prefix=/usr \ --bindir=/bin
```

The meaning of the configure option:

```bash
FORCE_UNSAFE_CONFIGURE=1
```

This forces the test for `mknod` to be run as root. It is generally considered dangerous to run this test as the root user, but as it is being run on a system that has only been partially built, overriding it is OK.

Compile the package:

```bash
make
```

To test the results (about 3 SBU), issue:

```bash
make check
```

One test, capabilities: binary store/restore, is known to fail.

Install the package:

```bash
make install
make -C doc install-html docdir=/usr/share/doc/tar-1.34
```

8.67.2. Contents of Tar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Installed programs:</th>
<th>tar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Installed directory:</td>
<td>/usr/share/doc/tar-1.34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short Descriptions

| tar       | Creates, extracts files from, and lists the contents of archives, also known as tarballs |
8.68. Texinfo-6.7

The Texinfo package contains programs for reading, writing, and converting info pages.

Approximate build time: 0.7 SBU
Required disk space: 105 MB

8.68.1. Installation of Texinfo

Prepare Texinfo for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To test the results, issue:

```
make check
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Optionally, install the components belonging in a TeX installation:

```
make TEXMF=/usr/share/texmf install-tex
```

The meaning of the make parameter:

```
TEXMF=/usr/share/texmf
```

The TEXMF makefile variable holds the location of the root of the TeX tree if, for example, a TeX package will be installed later.

The Info documentation system uses a plain text file to hold its list of menu entries. The file is located at /usr/share/info/dir. Unfortunately, due to occasional problems in the Makefiles of various packages, it can sometimes get out of sync with the info pages installed on the system. If the /usr/share/info/dir file ever needs to be recreated, the following optional commands will accomplish the task:

```
pushd /usr/share/info
   rm -v dir
   for f in *
      do install-info $f dir 2>/dev/null
done
popd
```

8.68.2. Contents of Texinfo

Installed programs: info, install-info, makeinfo (link to texi2any), pdftexi2dvi, pod2texi, texi2any, texi2dvi, texi2pdf, and texindex

Installed library: MiscXS.so, Parsetexi.so, and XSParagraph.so (all in /usr/lib/texinfo)

Installed directories: /usr/share/texinfo and /usr/lib/texinfo
Short Descriptions

**info**  
Used to read info pages which are similar to man pages, but often go much deeper than just explaining all the available command line options [For example, compare man bison and info bison.]

**install-info**  
Used to install info pages; it updates entries in the info index file

**makeinfo**  
Translates the given Texinfo source documents into info pages, plain text, or HTML

**pdftexi2dvi**  
Used to format the given Texinfo document into a Portable Document Format (PDF) file

**pod2texi**  
Converts Pod to Texinfo format

**tex2any**  
Translate Texinfo source documentation to various other formats

**texi2dvi**  
Used to format the given Texinfo document into a device-independent file that can be printed

**texi2pdf**  
Used to format the given Texinfo document into a Portable Document Format (PDF) file

**texindex**  
Used to sort Texinfo index files
8.69. Vim-8.2.2433

The Vim package contains a powerful text editor.

Approximate build time: 2.0 SBU
Required disk space: 208 MB

Alternatives to Vim

If you prefer another editor—such as Emacs, Joe, or Nano—please refer to http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/postlfs/editors.html for suggested installation instructions.

8.69.1. Installation of Vim

First, change the default location of the vimrc configuration file to /etc:

```
    echo '#define SYS_VIMRC_FILE "/etc/vimrc"' >> src/feature.h
```

Prepare vim for compilation:

```
    ./configure --prefix=/usr
```

Compile the package:

```
    make
```

To prepare the tests, ensure that user tester can write to the source tree:

```
    chown -Rv tester .
```

Now run the tests as user tester:

```
    su tester -c "LANG=en_US.UTF-8 make -j1 test" &> vim-test.log
```

The test suite outputs a lot of binary data to the screen. This can cause issues with the settings of the current terminal. The problem can be avoided by redirecting the output to a log file as shown above. A successful test will result in the words "ALL DONE" in the log file at completion.

Install the package:

```
    make install
```

Many users are used to using vi instead of vim. To allow execution of vim when users habitually enter vi, create a symlink for both the binary and the man page in the provided languages:

```
    ln -sv vim /usr/bin/vi
    for L in /usr/share/man/{,*/}man1/vim.1; do
        ln -sv vim.1 $(dirname $L)/vi.1
    done
```

By default, vim's documentation is installed in /usr/share/vim. The following symlink allows the documentation to be accessed via /usr/share/doc/vim-8.2.2433, making it consistent with the location of documentation for other packages:

```
    ln -sv ../vim/vim82/doc /usr/share/doc/vim-8.2.2433
```
If an X Window System is going to be installed on the LFS system, it may be necessary to recompile vim after installing X. Vim comes with a GUI version of the editor that requires X and some additional libraries to be installed. For more information on this process, refer to the vim documentation and the vim installation page in the BLFS book at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/postlfs/vim.html.

8.69.2. Configuring Vim

By default, **vim** runs in vi-incompatible mode. This may be new to users who have used other editors in the past. The “nocompatible” setting is included below to highlight the fact that a new behavior is being used. It also reminds those who would change to “compatible” mode that it should be the first setting in the configuration file. This is necessary because it changes other settings, and overrides must come after this setting. Create a default **vim** configuration file by running the following:

```bash
cat > /etc/vimrc << "EOF"
" Begin /etc/vimrc

" Ensure defaults are set before customizing settings, not after
source $VIMRUNTIME/defaults.vim
let skip_defaults_vim=1

set nocompatible
set backspace=2
set mouse=
syntax on
if (&term == "xterm") || (&term == "putty")
  set background=dark
endif

" End /etc/vimrc
EOF
```

The *set nocompatible* setting makes **vim** behave in a more useful way (the default) than the vi-compatible manner. Remove the “no” to keep the old **vi** behavior. The *set backspace=2* setting allows backspacing over line breaks, autoindents, and the start of an insert. The *syntax on* parameter enables vim’s syntax highlighting. The *set mouse=* setting enables proper pasting of text with the mouse when working in chroot or over a remote connection. Finally, the *if* statement with the *set background=dark* setting corrects **vim**’s guess about the background color of some terminal emulators. This gives the highlighting a better color scheme for use on the black background of these programs.

Documentation for other available options can be obtained by running the following command:

```bash
vim -c ':options'
```
Note

By default, vim only installs spell files for the English language. To install spell files for your preferred language, download the *.spl and optionally, the *.sug files for your language and character encoding from ftp://ftp.vim.org/pub/vim/runtime/spell/ and save them to /usr/share/vim/vim82/spell/.

To use these spell files, some configuration in /etc/vimrc is needed, e.g.:

```
set spelllang=en,ru
set spell
```

For more information, see the appropriate README file located at the URL above.

8.69.3. Contents of Vim

**Installed programs:**
ex (link to vim), rview (link to vim), rvim (link to vim), vi (link to vim), view (link to vim), vim, vimdiff (link to vim), vmtutor, and xxd

**Installed directory:** /usr/share/vim

**Short Descriptions**

- **ex**
  Starts *vim* in ex mode

- **rview**
  Is a restricted version of *view*; no shell commands can be started and *view* cannot be suspended

- **rvim**
  Is a restricted version of *vim*; no shell commands can be started and *vim* cannot be suspended

- **vi**
  Link to *vim*

- **view**
  Starts *vim* in read-only mode

- **vim**
  Is the editor

- **vimdiff**
  Edits two or three versions of a file with *vim* and shows differences

- **vmtutor**
  Teaches the basic keys and commands of *vim*

- **xxd**
  Creates a hex dump of the given file; it can also do the reverse, so it can be used for binary patching
8.70. Systemd-247

The systemd package contains programs for controlling the startup, running, and shutdown of the system.

Approximate build time: 1.8 SBU
Required disk space: 264 MB

8.70.1. Installation of systemd

First, apply a patch to fix some regressions:

```
patch -Npl -i ../systemd-247-upstream_fixes-1.patch
```

Create a symlink to work around the xsltproc command not being installed:

```
ln -sf /bin/true /usr/bin/xsltproc
```

Set up the man pages:

```
tar -xf ../systemd-man-pages-247.tar.xz
```

Remove tests that cannot be built in chroot:

```
sed '181,$ d' -i src/resolve/meson.build
```

Remove an unneeded group, render, from the default udev rules:

```
sed -i 's/GROUP="render"/GROUP="video"/' rules.d/50-udev-default.rules.in
```
Prepare systemd for compilation:

```bash
mkdir -p build
cd build

LANG=en_US.UTF-8
meson --prefix=/usr
    --sysconfdir=/etc
    --localstatedir=/var
    -Dblkid=true
    -Dblooltype=release
    -Ddefault-dnssec=no
    -Dfirstboot=false
    -Dinstall-tests=false
    -Dkmod-path=/bin/kmod
    -Dldconfig=false
    -Dmount-path=/bin/mount
    -Drootprefix=
    -Drootlibdir=/lib
    -Dsplit-usr=true
    -Dsulogin-path=/sbin/sulogin
    -Dsysusers=false
    -Dumount-path=/bin/umount
    -Db_ito=false
    -Drpmmacrosdir=no
    -Dhomed=false
    -Duserdb=false
    -Dman=true
    -Dmode=release
    -Ddocdir=/usr/share/doc/systemd-247
```

The meaning of the meson options:

- `-D*path=*`  
  These switches provide the location of binaries needed by systemd at runtime that have not yet been installed.

- `-Ddefault-dnssec=no`  
  This switch turns off the experimental DNSSEC support.

- `-Dfirstboot=false`  
  This switch prevents installation of systemd services responsible for setting up the system for the first time. They are not useful for LFS because everything is done manually.

- `-Dinstall-tests=false`  
  This switch prevents installation of the compiled tests.

- `-Dldconfig=false`  
  This switch prevents installation of a systemd unit that runs `ldconfig` at boot, which is not useful for source distributions such as LFS and makes the boot time longer. Remove it if the described feature is desired.
These switches ensure that core programs and shared libraries are installed in subdirectories of the root partition.

This switch ensures that systemd will work on systems where /bin, /lib and /sbin directories are not symlinks to their /usr counterparts.

This switch prevents installation of systemd services responsible for setting up the /etc/group and /etc/passwd files. Both files were created earlier in this chapter.

This switch disables installation of RPM Macros for use with systemd because LFS does not support RPM.

Remove two daemons that have dependencies that do not fit the scope of LFS.

Disable some features considered experimental by upstream.

Compile the package:

```
LANG=en_US.UTF-8 ninja
```

Install the package:

```
LANG=en_US.UTF-8 ninja install
```

Remove an unnecessary symbolic link:

```
rm -f /usr/bin/xsltproc
```

Remove a useless directory:

```
rm -rf /usr/lib/pam.d
```

Create the /etc/machine-id file needed by systemd-journald:

```
systemd-machine-id-setup
```

Setup the basic target structure:

```
systemctl preset-all
```

Disable a service that is known to cause problems with systems that use a network configuration other than what is provided by systemd-networkd:

```
systemctl disable systemd-time-wait-sync.service
```
8.70.2. Contents of systemd

**Installed programs:**
- bootctl, busctl, coredumpctl, halt (symlink to systemctl), hostnamectl, init, journalctl, kernel-install, localectl, loginctl, machinectl, networkctl, portablectl, poweroff (symlink to systemctl), reboot (symlink to systemctl), resolvconf (symlink to resolvectl), resolvectl, runlevel (symlink to systemctl), shutdown (symlink to systemctl), systemctl, systemd-analyze, systemd-ask-password, systemd-cat, systemd-cgls, systemd-cgtop, systemd-delta, systemd-detect-virt, systemd-dissect, systemd-escape, systemd-hwdb, systemd-id128, systemd-inhibit, systemd-machine-id-setup, systemd-mount, systemd-notify, systemd-nspawn, systemd-path, systemd-reap, systemd-resolve (symlink to resolvectl), systemd-run, systemd-socket-activate, systemd-stdio-bridge, systemd-tmpfiles, systemd-tty-ask-password-agent, systemd-umount (symlink to systemd-mount), telinit (symlink to systemctl), timedatectl, and udevadm

**Installed libraries:**
- libnss_myhostname.so.2, libnss_mymachines.so.2, libnss_resolve.so.2, libnss_systemd.so.2, libsystemd.so, libsystemd-shared-247.so (in /lib/systemd), and libudev.so

**Installed directories:**

**Short Descriptions**

- **bootctl**
  Is used to query the firmware and boot manager settings

- **busctl**
  Is used to introspect and monitor the D-Bus bus

- **coredumpctl**
  Is used to retrieve coredumps from the systemd journal

- **halt**
  Normally invokes **shutdown** with the `-h` option, except when already in run-level 0, then it tells the kernel to halt the system; it notes in the file `/var/log/wtmp` that the system is being brought down

- **hostnamectl**
  Is used to query and change the system hostname and related settings

- **init**
  Is the first process to be started when the kernel has initialized the hardware which takes over the boot process and starts all processes according to its configuration files. In this case, it starts systemd

- **journalctl**
  Is used to query the contents of the systemd journal

- **kernel-install**
  Is used to add and remove kernel and initramfs images to and from `/boot`. In LFS, this is done manually

- **localectl**
  Is used to query and change the system locale and keyboard layout settings

- **loginctl**
  Is used to introspect and control the state of the systemd Login Manager

- **machinectl**
  Is used to introspect and control the state of the systemd Virtual Machine and Container Registration Manager

- **networkctl**
  Is used to introspect and configure the state of the network links configured by systemd-networkd

- **portablectl**
  Is used to attach or detach portable services from the local system
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poweroff</td>
<td>Instructs the kernel to halt the system and switch off the computer (see halt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reboot</td>
<td>Instructs the kernel to reboot the system (see halt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resolvconf</td>
<td>Registers DNS server and domain configuration with systemd-resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resolvectl</td>
<td>Sends control commands to the network name resolution manager, or resolves domain names, IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, DNS records, and services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runlevel</td>
<td>Outputs the previous and the current run-level, as noted in the last run-level record in /run/utmp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown</td>
<td>Brings the system down in a safe and secure manner, signaling all processes and notifying all logged-in users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemctl</td>
<td>Is used to introspect and control the state of the systemd system and service manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-analyze</td>
<td>Is used to determine system startup performance of the current boot, as well as identify troublesome systemd units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-ask-password</td>
<td>Is used to query a system password or passphrase from the user, using a question message specified on the command line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-cat</td>
<td>Is used to connect the STDOUT and STDERR outputs of a process with the systemd journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-cgls</td>
<td>Recursively shows the contents of the selected Linux control group hierarchy in a tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-cgtop</td>
<td>Shows the top control groups of the local Linux control group hierarchy, ordered by their CPU, memory and disk I/O load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-delta</td>
<td>Is used to identify and compare configuration files in /etc that override default counterparts in /usr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-detect-virt</td>
<td>Detects whether the system is being run in a virtual environment, and adjusts udev accordingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-dissect</td>
<td>Is used to inspect OS disk images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-escape</td>
<td>Is used to escape strings for inclusion in systemd unit names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-hwdb</td>
<td>Is used to manage the hardware database (hwdb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-id128</td>
<td>Generates and prints id128 strings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-inhibit</td>
<td>Is used to execute a program with a shutdown, sleep or idle inhibitor lock taken, preventing an action such as a system shutdown until the process is completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-machine-id-setup</td>
<td>Is used by system installer tools to initialize the machine ID stored in /etc/machine-id at install time with a randomly generated ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-mount</td>
<td>Is used to temporarily mount or automount disks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-notify</td>
<td>Is used by daemon scripts to notify the init system about status changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systemd-nspawn</td>
<td>Is used to run a command or OS in a light-weight namespace container</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**systemd-path**
Is used to query system and user paths

**systemd-repart**
Is used to grow and add partitions to a partition table when systemd is used in an OS image (e.g. a container)

**systemd-resolve**
Is used to resolve domain names, IPV4 and IPV6 addresses, DNS resource records, and services

**systemd-run**
Is used to create and start a transient .service or a .scope unit and run the specified command in it. This is useful for validating systemd units

**systemd-socket-activate**
Is used to listen on socket devices and launch a process upon a successful connection to the socket

**systemd-tmpfiles**
Creates, deletes and cleans up volatile and temporary files and directories, based on the configuration file format and location specified in `tmpfiles.d` directories

**systemd-umount**
Unmounts mount points

**systemd-tty-ask-password-agent**
Is used to list and/or process pending systemd password requests

**telinit**
Tells `init` which run-level to change to

**timedatectl**
Is used to query and change the system clock and its settings

**udevadm**
Is a generic udev administration tool which controls the udevd daemon, provides info from the Udev hardware database, monitors uevents, waits for uevents to finish, tests udev configuration, and triggers uevents for a given device

**libsystemd**
Is the main systemd utility library

**libudev**
Is a library to access Udev device information
8.71. D-Bus-1.12.20

D-Bus is a message bus system, a simple way for applications to talk to one another. D-Bus supplies both a system daemon (for events such as "new hardware device added" or "printer queue changed") and a per-user-login-session daemon (for general IPC needs among user applications). Also, the message bus is built on top of a general one-to-one message passing framework, which can be used by any two applications to communicate directly (without going through the message bus daemon).

Approximate build time: 0.2 SBU
Required disk space: 18 MB

8.71.1. Installation of D-Bus

Prepare D-Bus for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr                        \
    --sysconfdir=/etc                    \
    --localstatedir=/var                 \
    --disable-static                     \
    --disable-doxygen-docs               \
    --disable-xml-docs                   \
    --docdir=/usr/share/doc/dbus-1.12.20 \n    --with-console-auth-dir=/run/console \n    --with-system-pid-file=/run/dbus/pid  \n    --with-system-socket=/run/dbus/system_bus_socket
```

The meaning of the configure options:

```
--with-console-auth-dir=/run/console
```
This specifies the location of the ConsoleKit authorization directory.

```
--with-system-pid-file=/run/dbus/pid and --with-system-socket=/run/dbus/system_bus_socket
```
These set the location of the PID file and the system bus socket to be in /run, instead of deprecated /var/run.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

This package does come with a test suite, but it requires several packages that are not included in LFS. Instructions for running the test suite can be found in the BLFS book at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/general/dbus.html.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

The shared library needs to be moved to /lib, and as a result the .so file in /usr/lib will need to be recreated:

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libdbus-1.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../*.so $(readlink /usr/lib/libdbus-1.so) /usr/lib/libdbus-1.so
```

Create a symlink so that D-Bus and systemd can use the same machine-id file:

```
ln -sfv /etc/machine-id /var/lib/dbus
```
8.71.2. Contents of D-Bus

Installed programs: dbus-cleanup-sockets, dbus-daemon, dbus-launch, dbus-monitor, dbus-run-session, dbus-send, dbus-test-tool, dbus-update-activation-environment, and dbus-uuidgen

Installed libraries: libdbus-1.{a,so}

Installed directories: /etc/dbus-1, /usr/include/dbus-1.0, /usr/lib/dbus-1.0, /usr/share/dbus-1, /usr/share/doc/dbus-1.12.20, and /var/lib/dbus

Short Descriptions

dbus-cleanup-sockets is used to remove leftover sockets in a directory
dbus-daemon is the D-Bus message bus daemon
dbus-launch Starts dbus-daemon from a shell script
dbus-monitor Monitors messages passing through a D-Bus message bus
dbus-run-session Starts a session bus instance of dbus-daemon from a shell script and starts a specified program in that session
dbus-send Sends a message to a D-Bus message bus
dbus-test-tool Is a tool to help packages test D-Bus
dbus-update-activation-environment Updates environment variables that will be set for D-Bus session services
dbus-uuidgen Generates a universally unique ID
libdbus-1 Contains API functions used to communicate with the D-Bus message bus
8.72. Procps-ng-3.3.17

The Procps-ng package contains programs for monitoring processes.

Note

This package extracts to the directory procps-3.3.17, not the expected procps-ng-3.3.17.

Approximate build time: 0.5 SBU
Required disk space: 20 MB

8.72.1. Installation of Procps-ng

Prepare procps-ng for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr
  --exec-prefix=
  --libdir=/usr/lib
  --docdir=/usr/share/doc/procps-ng-3.3.17
  --disable-static
  --disable-kill
  --with-systemd
```

The meaning of the configure option:

```
--disable-kill
```

This switch disables building the `kill` command that will be installed by the Util-linux package.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To run the test suite, run:

```
make check
```

Five tests related to pkill are known to fail due to a problem with tests that were not updated.

Install the package:

```
make install
```

Finally, move essential libraries to a location that can be found if `/usr` is not mounted.

```
mv -v /usr/lib/libprocps.so.* /lib
ln -sfv ../../lib/$(readlink /usr/lib/libprocps.so) /usr/lib/libprocps.so
```

8.72.2. Contents of Procps-ng

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Installed programs: free, pgrep, pidof, pkill, pmap, ps, pwdx, slabtop, sysctl, tload, top, uptime, vmstat, w, and watch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Installed library: libprocps.so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installed directories: /usr/include/proc and /usr/share/doc/procps-ng-3.3.17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Short Descriptions

**free** Reports the amount of free and used memory (both physical and swap memory) in the system

**pgrep** Looks up processes based on their name and other attributes

**pidof** Reports the PIDs of the given programs

**pkill** Signals processes based on their name and other attributes

**pmap** Reports the memory map of the given process

**ps** Lists the current running processes

**pwait** Waits for a process to finish before executing.

**pwdx** Reports the current working directory of a process

**slabtop** Displays detailed kernel slab cache information in real time

**sysctl** Modifies kernel parameters at run time

**tload** Prints a graph of the current system load average

**top** Displays a list of the most CPU intensive processes; it provides an ongoing look at processor activity in real time

**uptime** Reports how long the system has been running, how many users are logged on, and the system load averages

**vmstat** Reports virtual memory statistics, giving information about processes, memory, paging, block Input/Output (IO), traps, and CPU activity

**w** Shows which users are currently logged on, where, and since when

**watch** Runs a given command repeatedly, displaying the first screen-full of its output; this allows a user to watch the output change over time

**libprocps** Contains the functions used by most programs in this package
8.73. Util-linux-2.36.2

The Util-linux package contains miscellaneous utility programs. Among them are utilities for handling file systems, consoles, partitions, and messages.

**Approximate build time:** 1.1 SBU  
**Required disk space:** 262 MB

8.73.1. Installation of Util-linux

Prepare Util-linux for compilation:

```
./configure ADJTIME_PATH=/var/lib/hwclock/adjtime  
   --docdir=/usr/share/doc/util-linux-2.36.2  
   --disable-chfn-chsh  
   --disable-login  
   --disable-nologin  
   --disable-su  
   --disable-setpriv  
   --disable-runuser  
   --disable-pylibmount  
   --disable-static  
   --without-python  
   runstatedir=/run
```

The --disable and --without options prevent warnings about building components that require packages not in LFS or are inconsistent with programs installed by other packages.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

If desired, run the test suite as a non-root user:

```
bash tests/run.sh --srcdir=$PWD --builddir=$PWD
```

**Warning**

Running the test suite as the root user can be harmful to your system. To run it, the CONFIG_SCSI_DEBUG option for the kernel must be available in the currently running system and must be built as a module. Building it into the kernel will prevent booting. For complete coverage, other BLFS packages must be installed. If desired, this test can be run after rebooting into the completed LFS system and running:

```
chown -Rv tester .
su tester -c "make -k check"
```

Install the package:

```
make install
```
8.73.2. Contents of Util-linux

**Installed programs:**
- addpart
- agetty
- blkdiscard
- blkid
- blkzone
- blockdev
- cal
- cfdisk
- chcpu
- chmem
- choom
- chrt
- col
- colcrt
- colrm
- column
- ctrlaltdel
- delpart
- dmesg
- eject
- fallocate
- fdformat
- fdisk
- fincore
- findfs
- findmnt
- flock
- fsck
- fsck.cramfs
- fsck.minix
- fsfreeze
- fstrim
- getopt
- hexdump
- hwclock
- i386
- ionice
- ipcmk
- ipcrm
- ips
- isosize
- kill
- last
- lastb
- ldattach
- linux32
- linux64
- logger
- look
- losetup
- lsblk
- lscpu
- lsipc
- lslocks
- lslogins
- lsmem
- lsn
- mcookie
- mesg
- mkfs
- mkfs.bfs
- mkfs.cramfs
- mkfs.minix
- mkswap
- more
- mount
- mountpoint
- namei
- nsenter
- partx
- pivot_root
- prlimit
- raw
- readprofile
- rename
- renice
- resizepart
- rev
- rfkill
- rtcwake
- script
- scriptreplay
- setarch
- setsid
- setterm
- sfdisk
- sulogin
- swaplabel
- swapoff
- swapon
- switch_root
- taskset
- ul
- umount
- unmount
- uname26
- unshare
- utmpdump
- uuidd
- uuidgen
- uuidparse
- wall
- wdctl
- whereis
- wipefs
- x86_64
- zramctl

**Installed libraries:**
- libblkid.so
- libfdisk.so
- libmount.so
- libsmartcols.so
- libuuid.so

**Installed directories:**
- /usr/include/blkid
- /usr/include/libfdisk
- /usr/include/libmount
- /usr/include/libsmartcols
- /usr/include/uuid
- /usr/share/doc/util-linux-2.36.2
- /var/lib/hwclock

**Short Descriptions**

- **addpart**: Informs the Linux kernel of new partitions
- **agetty**: Opens a tty port, prompts for a login name, and then invokes the login program
- **blkdiscard**: Discards sectors on a device
- **blkid**: A command line utility to locate and print block device attributes
- **blkzone**: Runs zone command on the given block device
- **blockdev**: Allows users to call block device ioctl from the command line
- **cal**: Displays a simple calendar
- **cfdisk**: Manipulates the partition table of the given device
- **chcpu**: Modifies the state of CPUs
- **chmem**: Configures memory
- **choom**: Displays and adjusts OOM-killer score
- **chrt**: Manipulates real-time attributes of a process
- **col**: Filters out reverse line feeds
- **colcrt**: Filters nroff output for terminals that lack some capabilities, such as overstriking and half-lines
- **colrm**: Filters out the given columns
- **column**: Formats a given file into multiple columns
- **ctrlaltdel**: Sets the function of the Ctrl+Alt+Del key combination to a hard or a soft reset
- **delpart**: Asks the Linux kernel to remove a partition
- **dmesg**: Dumps the kernel boot messages
- **eject**: Ejects removable media
- **fallocate**: Preallocates space to a file
- **fdformat**: Low-level formats a floppy disk
fdisk  Manipulates the partition table of the given device
findcore  Counts pages of file contents in core
findfs  Finds a file system by label or Universally Unique Identifier (UUID)
findmnt  Is a command line interface to the libmount library for work with mountinfo, fstab and mtab files
flock  Acquires a file lock and then executes a command with the lock held
fsck  Is used to check, and optionally repair, file systems
fsck.cramfs  Performs a consistency check on the Cramfs file system on the given device
fsck.minix  Performs a consistency check on the Minix file system on the given device
fsfreeze  Is a very simple wrapper around FIFREEZE/FITHAW ioctl kernel driver operations
fstrim  Discards unused blocks on a mounted filesystem
getopt  Parses options in the given command line
hexdump  Dumps the given file in hexadecimal or in another given format
hwclock  Reads or sets the system's hardware clock, also called the Real-Time Clock (RTC) or Basic Input-Output System (BIOS) clock
i386  A symbolic link to setarch
ionice  Gets or sets the io scheduling class and priority for a program
ipcmk  Creates various IPC resources
ipcrm  Removes the given Inter-Process Communication (IPC) resource
ipcs  Provides IPC status information
isosize  Reports the size of an iso9660 file system
kill  Sends signals to processes
last  Shows which users last logged in (and out), searching back through the /var/log/wtmp file; it also shows system boots, shutdowns, and run-level changes
lastb  Shows the failed login attempts, as logged in /var/log/btmp
ldattach  Attaches a line discipline to a serial line
linux32  A symbolic link to setarch
linux64  A symbolic link to setarch
logger  Enters the given message into the system log
look  Displays lines that begin with the given string
losetup  Sets up and controls loop devices
lsblk  Lists information about all or selected block devices in a tree-like format
lscpu  Prints CPU architecture information
lsipc  Prints information on IPC facilities currently employed in the system
lslocks  Lists local system locks
lslogins  Lists information about users, groups and system accounts
lsmem  Lists the ranges of available memory with their online status
lsns  Lists namespaces
mcookie  Generates magic cookies (128-bit random hexadecimal numbers) for xauth
mesg    Controls whether other users can send messages to the current user's terminal
mkfs    Builds a file system on a device (usually a hard disk partition)
mkfs.bfs Creates a Santa Cruz Operations (SCO) bfs file system
mkfs.cramfs Creates a cramfs file system
mkfs.minix Creates a Minix file system
mkswap   Initializes the given device or file to be used as a swap area
more     A filter for paging through text one screen at a time
mount    Attaches the file system on the given device to a specified directory in the file-system tree
mountpoint Checks if the directory is a mountpoint
namei    Shows the symbolic links in the given pathnames
nsenter  Runs a program with namespaces of other processes
partx    Tells the kernel about the presence and numbering of on-disk partitions
pivot_root Makes the given file system the new root file system of the current process
prlimit  Get and set a process' resource limits
raw      Bind a Linux raw character device to a block device
readprofile Reads kernel profiling information
rename   Renames the given files, replacing a given string with another
renice   Alters the priority of running processes
resizepart Asks the Linux kernel to resize a partition
rev      Reverses the lines of a given file
rkfill   Tool for enabling and disabling wireless devices
rtcwake  Used to enter a system sleep state until specified wakeup time
script   Makes a typescript of a terminal session
scriptreplay Plays back typescripts using timing information
setarch Changes reported architecture in a new program environment and sets personality flags
setsid  Runs the given program in a new session
setterm  Sets terminal attributes
sfdisk   A disk partition table manipulator
sulogin  Allows root to log in; it is normally invoked by init when the system goes into single user mode
swaplabel Allows to change swaparea UUID and label
swapoff  Disables devices and files for paging and swapping
swapon   Enables devices and files for paging and swapping and lists the devices and files currently in use
switch_root Switches to another filesystem as the root of the mount tree
tailf    Tracks the growth of a log file; displays the last 10 lines of a log file, then continues displaying any new entries in the log file as they are created
**taskset**  Retrieves or sets a process’ CPU affinity

**ul**  A filter for translating underscores into escape sequences indicating underlining for the terminal in use

**umount**  Disconnects a file system from the system's file tree

**uname26**  A symbolic link to `setarch`

**unshare**  Runs a program with some namespaces unshared from parent

**utmpdump**  Displays the content of the given login file in a more user-friendly format

**uuidd**  A daemon used by the UUID library to generate time-based UUIDs in a secure and guaranteed-unique fashion

**uuidgen**  Creates new UUIDs. Each new UUID can reasonably be considered unique among all UUIDs created, on the local system and on other systems, in the past and in the future

**uuidparse**  An utility to parse unique identifiers

**wall**  Displays the contents of a file or, by default, its standard input, on the terminals of all currently logged in users

**wdctl**  Shows hardware watchdog status

**whereis**  Reports the location of the binary, source, and man page for the given command

**wipes**  Wipes a filesystem signature from a device

**x86_64**  A symbolic link to `setarch`

**zramctl**  A program to set up and control zram (compressed ram disk) devices

**libblkid**  Contains routines for device identification and token extraction

**libfdisk**  Contains routines for manipulating partition tables

**libmount**  Contains routines for block device mounting and unmounting

**libsmartcols**  Contains routines for aiding screen output in tabular form

**libuuid**  Contains routines for generating unique identifiers for objects that may be accessible beyond the local system
8.74. E2fsprogs-1.46.1

The e2fsprogs package contains the utilities for handling the ext2 file system. It also supports the ext3 and ext4 journaling file systems.

Approximate build time: 4.4 SBU on a spinning disk, 1.5 SBU on an SSD
Required disk space: 102 MB

8.74.1. Installation of E2fsprogs

The e2fsprogs documentation recommends that the package be built in a subdirectory of the source tree:

```
mkdir -v build
    cd   build
```

Prepare e2fsprogs for compilation:

```
./configure --prefix=/usr           
    --bindir=/bin           
    --with-root-prefix=""   
    --enable-elf-shlibs     
    --disable-libblkid      
    --disable-libuuid       
    --disable-uuidd         
    --disable-fsck
```

The meaning of the configure options:

--with-root-prefix="" and --bindir=/bin

Certain programs (such as the e2fsck program) are considered essential programs. When, for example, /usr is not mounted, these programs still need to be available. They belong in directories like /lib and /sbin. If this option is not passed to configure, the programs are installed into the /usr directory.

--enable-elf-shlibs

This creates the shared libraries which some programs in this package use.

--disable-*

This prevents e2fsprogs from building and installing the libuuid and libblkid libraries, the uuidd daemon, and the fsck wrapper, as util-linux installs more recent versions.

Compile the package:

```
make
```

To run the tests, issue:

```
make check
```

One test, m_rootdir_acl, is known to fail.

On a spinning disk, the tests take a little more than 4 SBUs. They can be much shorter on an SSD (down to about 1.5 SBUs).

Install the package:

```
make install
```
Remove useless static libraries:

```bash
rm -fv /usr/lib/{libcom_err,libe2p,libext2fs,libss}.a
```

This package installs a gzipped `.info` file but doesn't update the system-wide `dir` file. Unzip this file and then update the system `dir` file using the following commands:

```bash
gunzip -v /usr/share/info/libext2fs.info.gz
install-info --dir-file=/usr/share/info/dir /usr/share/info/libext2fs.info
```

If desired, create and install some additional documentation by issuing the following commands:

```bash
makeinfo -o doc/com_err.info ../lib/et/com_err.texinfo
install -v -m644 doc/com_err.info /usr/share/info
install-info --dir-file=/usr/share/info/dir /usr/share/info/com_err.info
```

### 8.74.2. Contents of E2fsprogs

**Installed programs:**

- badblocks
- chattr
- compile_et
- debugfs
- dumpe2fs
- e2freefrag
- e2fsck
- e2image
- e2label
- e2mmpstatus
- e2scrub
- e2scrub_all
- e2undo
- e4crypt
- e4defrag
- filefrag
- fsck.ext2
- fsck.ext3
- fsck.ext4
- logsave
- lsattr
- mk_cmds
- mke2fs
- mkfs.ext2
- mkfs.ext3
- mkfs.ext4
- mklost+found
- resize2fs
- tune2fs

**Installed libraries:**

- libcom_err.so
- libe2p.so
- libext2fs.so
- libss.so

**Installed directories:**

- `/usr/include/e2p`
- `/usr/include/et`
- `/usr/include/ext2fs`
- `/usr/include/ss`
- `/usr/lib/e2fsprogs`
- `/usr/share/et`
- `/usr/share/ss`

**Short Descriptions**

- **badblocks**
  Searches a device (usually a disk partition) for bad blocks

- **chattr**
  Changes the attributes of files on an `ext2` file system; it also changes `ext3` file systems, the journaling version of `ext2` file systems

- **compile_et**
  An error table compiler; it converts a table of error-code names and messages into a C source file suitable for use with the `com_err` library

- **debugfs**
  A file system debugger; it can be used to examine and change the state of an `ext2` file system

- **dumpe2fs**
  Prints the super block and blocks group information for the file system present on a given device

- **e2freefrag**
  Reports free space fragmentation information

- **e2fsck**
  Is used to check, and optionally repair `ext2` file systems and `ext3` file systems

- **e2image**
  Is used to save critical `ext2` file system data to a file

- **e2label**
  Displays or changes the file system label on the `ext2` file system present on a given device

- **e2mmpstatus**
  Checks MMP status of an ext4 filesystem

- **e2scrub**
  Checks the contents of a mounted `ext[234]` filesystem

- **e2scrub_all**
  Checks all mounted `ext[234]` filesystems for errors

- **e2undo**
  Replays the undo log `undo_log` for an `ext2/ext3/ext4` filesystem found on a device [This can be used to undo a failed operation by an e2fsprogs program.]

- **e4crypt**
  Ext4 filesystem encryption utility

- **e4defrag**
  Online defragmenter for ext4 filesystems

225
filefrag  Reports on how badly fragmented a particular file might be
fsck.ext2  By default checks ext2 file systems and is a hard link to e2fsck
fsck.ext3  By default checks ext3 file systems and is a hard link to e2fsck
fsck.ext4  By default checks ext4 file systems and is a hard link to e2fsck
logsave  Saves the output of a command in a log file
lsattr  Lists the attributes of files on a second extended file system
mk_cmds  Converts a table of command names and help messages into a C source file suitable for use with the libss subsystem library
mke2fs  Creates an ext2 or ext3 file system on the given device
mkfs.ext2  By default creates ext2 file systems and is a hard link to mke2fs
mkfs.ext3  By default creates ext3 file systems and is a hard link to mke2fs
mkfs.ext4  By default creates ext4 file systems and is a hard link to mke2fs
mklost+found  Used to create a lost+found directory on an ext2 file system; it pre-allocates disk blocks to this directory to lighten the task of e2fsck
resize2fs  Can be used to enlarge or shrink an ext2 file system
tune2fs  Adjusts tunable file system parameters on an ext2 file system
libcom_err  The common error display routine
libe2p  Used by dumpe2fs, chattr, and lsattr
libext2fs  Contains routines to enable user-level programs to manipulate an ext2 file system
libss  Used by debugfs
8.75. About Debugging Symbols

Most programs and libraries are, by default, compiled with debugging symbols included (with gcc's -g option). This means that when debugging a program or library that was compiled with debugging information, the debugger can provide not only memory addresses, but also the names of the routines and variables.

However, the inclusion of these debugging symbols enlarges a program or library significantly. The following is an example of the amount of space these symbols occupy:

- A bash binary with debugging symbols: 1200 KB
- A bash binary without debugging symbols: 480 KB
- Glibc and GCC files (/lib and /usr/lib) with debugging symbols: 87 MB
- Glibc and GCC files without debugging symbols: 16 MB

Sizes may vary depending on which compiler and C library were used, but when comparing programs with and without debugging symbols, the difference will usually be a factor between two and five.

Because most users will never use a debugger on their system software, a lot of disk space can be regained by removing these symbols. The next section shows how to strip all debugging symbols from the programs and libraries.

8.76. Stripping Again

This section is optional. If the intended user is not a programmer and does not plan to do any debugging on the system software, the system size can be decreased by about 2 GB by removing the debugging symbols from binaries and libraries. This causes no inconvenience other than not being able to debug the software fully anymore.

Most people who use the commands mentioned below do not experience any difficulties. However, it is easy to make a typo and render the new system unusable, so before running the strip commands, it is a good idea to make a backup of the LFS system in its current state.
First place the debugging symbols for selected libraries in separate files. This debugging information is needed if running regression tests that use valgrind or gdb later in BLFS.

```
save_lib="ld-2.33.so libc-2.33.so libpthread-2.33.so libthread_db-1.0.so"

cd /lib

for LIB in $save_lib; do
    objcopy --only-keep-debug $LIB $LIB.dbg
    strip --strip-unneeded $LIB
    objcopy --add-gnu-debuglink=$LIB.dbg $LIB
done

save_usrlib="libquadmath.so.0.0.0 libstdc++.so.6.0.28
            libitm.so.1.0.0 libatomic.so.1.2.0"

cd /usr/lib

for LIB in $save_usrlib; do
    objcopy --only-keep-debug $LIB $LIB.dbg
    strip --strip-unneeded $LIB
    objcopy --add-gnu-debuglink=$LIB.dbg $LIB
done

unset LIB save_lib save_usrlib
```

Now the binaries and libraries can be stripped:

```
find /usr/lib -type f -name \*.a \n    -exec strip --strip-debug {} ';' 

find /lib /usr/lib -type f -name \*.so* ! -name \*dbg \n    -exec strip --strip-unneeded {} ';' 

find /{bin,sbin} /usr/{bin,sbin,libexec} -type f \n    -exec strip --strip-all {} ';' 
```

A large number of files will be reported as having their file format not recognized. These warnings can be safely ignored. These warnings indicate that those files are scripts instead of binaries.

### 8.77. Cleaning Up

Finally, clean up some extra files left around from running tests:

```
rm -rf /tmp/*
```
Now log out and reenter the chroot environment with an updated chroot command. From now on, use this updated chroot command any time you need to reenter the chroot environment after exiting:

```bash
logout

chroot "$LFS" /usr/bin/env -i  \
   HOME=/root TERM="$TERM"  \
   PS1='(lfs chroot) \u:\w\$ '  \
   PATH=/bin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/usr/sbin \n /bin/bash --login
```

Here the `+h` option is not used anymore, since all the previous programs have been replaced: hashing is therefore possible.

If the virtual kernel file systems have been unmounted, either manually or through a reboot, ensure that the virtual kernel file systems are mounted when reentering the chroot. This process was explained in Section 7.3.2, “Mounting and Populating /dev” and Section 7.3.3, “Mounting Virtual Kernel File Systems”.

There are also several files installed in the /usr/lib and /usr/libexec directories with a file name extension of .la. These are "libtool archive" files. As already said, they are only useful when linking with static libraries. They are unneeded, and potentially harmful, when using dynamic shared libraries, specially when using also non-autotools build systems. To remove them, run:

```bash
find /usr/lib /usr/libexec -name ".*la" -delete
```

For more information about libtool archive files, see the BLFS section "About Libtool Archive (.la) files".

The compiler built in Chapter 6 and Chapter 7 is still partially installed and not needed anymore. Remove it with:

```bash
find /usr -depth -name $(uname -m)-lfs-linux-gnu\* | xargs rm -rf
```

The /tools directory can also be removed to further gain some space:

```bash
rm -rf /tools
```

Finally, remove the temporary 'tester' user account created at the beginning of the previous chapter.

```bash
userdel -r tester
```
Chapter 9. System Configuration

9.1. Introduction

This chapter discusses configuration files and systemd services. First, the general configuration files needed to set up networking are presented.

- Section 9.2, “General Network Configuration.”
- Section 9.2.3, “Configuring the system hostname.”
- Section 9.2.4, “Customizing the /etc/hosts File.”

Second, issues that affect the proper setup of devices are discussed.

- Section 9.3, “Overview of Device and Module Handling.”
- Section 9.4, “Managing Devices.”

Third, configuring the system clock and keyboard layout is shown.

- Section 9.5, “Configuring the system clock.”
- Section 9.6, “Configuring the Linux Console.”

Fourth, a brief introduction to the scripts and configuration files used when the user logs into the system is presented.

- Section 9.7, “Configuring the System Locale.”
- Section 9.8, “Creating the /etc/inputrc File.”

And finally, configuring the behavior of systemd is discussed.

- Section 9.10, “Systemd Usage and Configuration.”

9.2. General Network Configuration

This section only applies if a network card is to be configured.

9.2.1. Network Interface Configuration Files

Starting with version 209, systemd ships a network configuration daemon called systemd-networkd which can be used for basic network configuration. Additionally, since version 213, DNS name resolution can be handled by systemd-resolved in place of a static /etc/resolv.conf file. Both services are enabled by default.

Configuration files for systemd-networkd (and systemd-resolved) can be placed in /usr/lib/systemd/network or /etc/systemd/network. Files in /etc/systemd/network have a higher priority than the ones in /usr/lib/systemd/network. There are three types of configuration files: .link, .netdev and .network files. For detailed descriptions and example contents of these configuration files, consult the systemd-link(5), systemd-netdev(5) and systemd-network(5) manual pages.

9.2.1.1. Network Device Naming

Udev normally assigns network card interface names based on physical system characteristics such as enp2s1. If you are not sure what your interface name is, you can always run ip link after you have booted your system.
For most systems, there is only one network interface for each type of connection. For example, the classic interface name for a wired connection is eth0. A wireless connection will usually have the name wifi0 or wlan0.

If you prefer to use the classic or customized network interface names, there are three alternative ways to do that:

- Mask udev's .link file for the default policy:

```bash
ln -s /dev/null /etc/systemd/network/99-default.link
```

- Create a manual naming scheme, for example by naming the interfaces something like "internet0", "dmz0", or "lan0". To do that, create .link files in /etc/systemd/network/ that select an explicit name or a better naming scheme for your network interfaces. For example:

```bash
cat > /etc/systemd/network/10-ether0.link << "EOF"
[Match]
# Change the MAC address as appropriate for your network device
MACAddress=12:34:45:78:90:AB

[Link]
Name=ether0
EOF
```

See the man page systemd.link(5) for more information.

- In /boot/grub/grub.cfg, pass the option net.ifnames=0 on the kernel command line.

### 9.2.1.2. Static IP Configuration

The command below creates a basic configuration file for a Static IP setup (using both systemd-networkd and systemd-resolved):

```bash
cat > /etc/systemd/network/10-eth-static.network << "EOF"
[Match]
Name=<network-device-name>

[Network]
Address=192.168.0.2/24
Gateway=192.168.0.1
DNS=192.168.0.1
Domains=<Your Domain Name>
EOF
```

Multiple DNS entries can be added if you have more than one DNS server. Do not include DNS or Domains entries if you intend to use a static /etc/resolv.conf file.
9.2.1.3. DHCP Configuration

The command below creates a basic configuration file for an IPv4 DHCP setup:

```
cat > /etc/systemd/network/10-eth-dhcp.network << "EOF"
[Match]
Name=<network-device-name>

[Network]
DHCP=ipv4

[DHCP]
UseDomains=true
EOF
```

9.2.2. Creating the /etc/resolv.conf File

If the system is going to be connected to the Internet, it will need some means of Domain Name Service (DNS) name resolution to resolve Internet domain names to IP addresses, and vice versa. This is best achieved by placing the IP address of the DNS server, available from the ISP or network administrator, into /etc/resolv.conf.

9.2.2.1. systemd-resolved Configuration

**Note**

If using another means to configure your network interfaces (ex: ppp, network-manager, etc.), or if using any type of local resolver (ex: bind, dnsmasq, unbound, etc.), or any other software that generates an /etc/resolv.conf (ex: resolvconf), the **systemd-resolved** service should not be used.

When using **systemd-resolved** for DNS configuration, it creates the file /run/systemd/resolve/resolv.conf. Create a symlink in /etc to use the generated file:

```
ln -sfv /run/systemd/resolve/resolv.conf /etc/resolv.conf
```

9.2.2.2. Static resolv.conf Configuration

If a static /etc/resolv.conf is desired, create it by running the following command:

```
cat > /etc/resolv.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/resolv.conf

domain <Your Domain Name>
nameserver <IP address of your primary nameserver>
nameserver <IP address of your secondary nameserver>

# End /etc/resolv.conf
EOF
```

The **domain** statement can be omitted or replaced with a **search** statement. See the man page for resolv.conf for more details.
Replace `<IP address of the nameserver>` with the IP address of the DNS server most appropriate for your setup. There will often be more than one entry (requirements demand secondary servers for fallback capability). If you only need or want one DNS server, remove the second `nameserver` line from the file. The IP address may also be a router on the local network. Another option is to use the Google Public DNS service using the IP addresses below as nameservers.

Note


9.2.3. Configuring the system hostname

During the boot process, the file `/etc/hostname` is used for establishing the system's hostname.

Create the `/etc/hostname` file and enter a hostname by running:

```
echo "<lfs>" > /etc/hostname
```

<lfs> needs to be replaced with the name given to the computer. Do not enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) here. That information is put in the `/etc/hosts` file.

9.2.4. Customizing the `/etc/hosts` File

Decide on a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN), and possible aliases for use in the `/etc/hosts` file. If using static IP addresses, you'll also need to decide on an IP address. The syntax for a hosts file entry is:

```
IP_address myhost.example.org aliases
```

Unless the computer is to be visible to the Internet (i.e., there is a registered domain and a valid block of assigned IP addresses—most users do not have this), make sure that the IP address is in the private network IP address range. Valid ranges are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Private Network Address Range</th>
<th>Normal Prefix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.0.0.1 - 10.255.255.254</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172.x.0.1 - 172.x.255.254</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192.168.y.1 - 192.168.y.254</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x can be any number in the range 16-31. y can be any number in the range 0-255.

A valid private IP address could be 192.168.1.1. A valid FQDN for this IP could be lfs.example.org.

Even if not using a network card, a valid FQDN is still required. This is necessary for certain programs, such as MTAs, to operate properly.
Create the `/etc/hosts` file using the following command:

```
cat > /etc/hosts << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/hosts
127.0.0.1 localhost.localdomain localhost
127.0.1.1 <FQDN> <HOSTNAME>
<192.168.0.2> <FQDN> <HOSTNAME> [alias1] [alias2] ...
::1 localhost ip6-localhost ip6-loopback
ff02::1 ip6-allnodes
ff02::2 ip6-allrouters

# End /etc/hosts
EOF
```

The `<192.168.0.2>`, `<FQDN>`, and `<HOSTNAME>` values need to be changed for specific uses or requirements (if assigned an IP address by a network/system administrator and the machine will be connected to an existing network). The optional alias name(s) can be omitted, and the `<192.168.0.2` line can be omitted if you are using a connection configured with DHCP or IPv6 Autoconfiguration.

The ::1 entry is the IPv6 counterpart of 127.0.0.1 and represents the IPv6 loopback interface. 127.0.1.1 is a loopback entry reserved specifically for the FQDN.

### 9.3. Overview of Device and Module Handling

In Chapter 8, we installed the udev package when systemd was built. Before we go into the details regarding how this works, a brief history of previous methods of handling devices is in order.

Linux systems in general traditionally used a static device creation method, whereby a great many device nodes were created under `/dev` (sometimes literally thousands of nodes), regardless of whether the corresponding hardware devices actually existed. This was typically done via a `MAKEDEV` script, which contains a number of calls to the `mknod` program with the relevant major and minor device numbers for every possible device that might exist in the world.

Using the udev method, only those devices which are detected by the kernel get device nodes created for them. Because these device nodes will be created each time the system boots, they will be stored on a `devtmpfs` file system (a virtual file system that resides entirely in system memory). Device nodes do not require much space, so the memory that is used is negligible.

#### 9.3.1. History

In February 2000, a new filesystem called `devfs` was merged into the 2.3.46 kernel and was made available during the 2.4 series of stable kernels. Although it was present in the kernel source itself, this method of creating devices dynamically never received overwhelming support from the core kernel developers.

The main problem with the approach adopted by `devfs` was the way it handled device detection, creation, and naming. The latter issue, that of device node naming, was perhaps the most critical. It is generally accepted that if device names are allowed to be configurable, then the device naming policy should be up to a system administrator, not imposed on them by any particular developer(s). The `devfs` file system also suffered from race conditions that were inherent in its design and could not be fixed without a substantial revision to the kernel. It was marked as deprecated for a long period – due to a lack of maintenance – and was finally removed from the kernel in June, 2006.
With the development of the unstable 2.5 kernel tree, later released as the 2.6 series of stable kernels, a new virtual filesystem called `sysfs` came to be. The job of `sysfs` is to export a view of the system's hardware configuration to userspace processes. With this userspace-visible representation, the possibility of developing a userspace replacement for `devfs` became much more realistic.

9.3.2. Udev Implementation

9.3.2.1. Sysfs

The `sysfs` filesystem was mentioned briefly above. One may wonder how `sysfs` knows about the devices present on a system and what device numbers should be used for them. Drivers that have been compiled into the kernel directly register their objects with a `sysfs` (devtmpfs internally) as they are detected by the kernel. For drivers compiled as modules, this registration will happen when the module is loaded. Once the `sysfs` filesystem is mounted (on `/sys`), data which the drivers register with `sysfs` are available to userspace processes and to `udevd` for processing (including modifications to device nodes).

9.3.2.2. Device Node Creation

Device files are created by the kernel by the `devtmpfs` filesystem. Any driver that wishes to register a device node will go through the `devtmpfs` (via the driver core) to do it. When a `devtmpfs` instance is mounted on `/dev`, the device node will initially be created with a fixed name, permissions, and owner.

A short time later, the kernel will send a uevent to `udevd`. Based on the rules specified in the files within the `/etc/udev/rules.d`, `/lib/udev/rules.d`, and `/run/udev/rules.d` directories, `udevd` will create additional symlinks to the device node, or change its permissions, owner, or group, or modify the internal `udevd` database entry (name) for that object.

The rules in these three directories are numbered and all three directories are merged together. If `udevd` can't find a rule for the device it is creating, it will leave the permissions and ownership at whatever `devtmpfs` used initially.

9.3.2.3. Module Loading

Device drivers compiled as modules may have aliases built into them. Aliases are visible in the output of the `modinfo` program and are usually related to the bus-specific identifiers of devices supported by a module. For example, the `snd-fm801` driver supports PCI devices with vendor ID 0x1319 and device ID 0x0801, and has an alias of “pci:v00001319d00000801sv*sd*bc04sc01i*”. For most devices, the bus driver exports the alias of the driver that would handle the device via `sysfs`. E.g., the `/sys/bus/pci/devices/0000:00:0d.0/modalias` file might contain the string “pci:v00001319d00000801sv00001319sd00001319bc04sc01i00”. The default rules provided with udev will cause `udevd` to call out to `/sbin/modprobe` with the contents of the MODALIAS uevent environment variable (which should be the same as the contents of the `modalias` file in `sysfs`), thus loading all modules whose aliases match this string after wildcard expansion.

In this example, this means that, in addition to `snd-fm801`, the obsolete (and unwanted) `forte` driver will be loaded if it is available. See below for ways in which the loading of unwanted drivers can be prevented.

The kernel itself is also able to load modules for network protocols, filesystems, and NLS support on demand.

9.3.2.4. Handling Hotpluggable/Dynamic Devices

When you plug in a device, such as a Universal Serial Bus (USB) MP3 player, the kernel recognizes that the device is now connected and generates a uevent. This uevent is then handled by `udevd` as described above.
9.3.3. Problems with Loading Modules and Creating Devices

There are a few possible problems when it comes to automatically creating device nodes.

9.3.3.1. A kernel module is not loaded automatically

Udev will only load a module if it has a bus-specific alias and the bus driver properly exports the necessary aliases to sysfs. In other cases, one should arrange module loading by other means. With Linux-5.10.17, udev is known to load properly-written drivers for INPUT, IDE, PCI, USB, SCSI, SERIO, and FireWire devices.

To determine if the device driver you require has the necessary support for udev, run `modinfo` with the module name as the argument. Now try locating the device directory under `/sys/bus` and check whether there is a `modalias` file there.

If the `modalias` file exists in `sysfs`, the driver supports the device and can talk to it directly, but doesn't have the alias, it is a bug in the driver. Load the driver without the help from udev and expect the issue to be fixed later.

If there is no `modalias` file in the relevant directory under `/sys/bus`, this means that the kernel developers have not yet added modalias support to this bus type. With Linux-5.10.17, this is the case with ISA busses. Expect this issue to be fixed in later kernel versions.

Udev is not intended to load “wrapper” drivers such as `snd-pcm-oss` and non-hardware drivers such as `loop` at all.

9.3.3.2. A kernel module is not loaded automatically, and udev is not intended to load it

If the “wrapper” module only enhances the functionality provided by some other module (e.g., `snd-pcm-oss` enhances the functionality of `snd-pcm` by making the sound cards available to OSS applications), configure `modprobe` to load the wrapper after udev loads the wrapped module. To do this, add a “softdep” line to the corresponding `/etc/modprobe.d/<filename>.conf` file. For example:

```
softdep snd-pcm post: snd-pcm-oss
```

Note that the “softdep” command also allows `pre:` dependencies, or a mixture of both `pre:` and `post:` dependencies. See the `modprobe.d(5)` manual page for more information on “softdep” syntax and capabilities.

9.3.3.3. Udev loads some unwanted module

Either don’t build the module, or blacklist it in a `/etc/modprobe.d/blacklist.conf` file as done with the `forte` module in the example below:

```
blacklist forte
```

Blacklisted modules can still be loaded manually with the explicit `modprobe` command.

9.3.3.4. Udev creates a device incorrectly, or makes a wrong symlink

This usually happens if a rule unexpectedly matches a device. For example, a poorly-written rule can match both a SCSI disk (as desired) and the corresponding SCSI generic device (incorrectly) by vendor. Find the offending rule and make it more specific, with the help of the `udevadm info` command.

9.3.3.5. Udev rule works unreliably

This may be another manifestation of the previous problem. If not, and your rule uses `sysfs` attributes, it may be a kernel timing issue, to be fixed in later kernels. For now, you can work around it by creating a rule that waits for the used `sysfs` attribute and appending it to the `/etc/udev/rules.d/10-wait_for_sysfs.rules` file (create this file if it does not exist). Please notify the LFS Development list if you do so and it helps.
9.3.3.6. Udev does not create a device

Further text assumes that the driver is built statically into the kernel or already loaded as a module, and that you have already checked that udev doesn't create a misnamed device.

Udev has no information needed to create a device node if a kernel driver does not export its data to sysfs. This is most common with third party drivers from outside the kernel tree. Create a static device node in /lib/udev/devices with the appropriate major/minor numbers (see the file devices.txt inside the kernel documentation or the documentation provided by the third party driver vendor). The static device node will be copied to /dev by udev.

9.3.3.7. Device naming order changes randomly after rebooting

This is due to the fact that udev, by design, handles uevents and loads modules in parallel, and thus in an unpredictable order. This will never be “fixed”. You should not rely upon the kernel device names being stable. Instead, create your own rules that make symlinks with stable names based on some stable attributes of the device, such as a serial number or the output of various *_id utilities installed by udev. See Section 9.4, “Managing Devices” and Section 9.2, “General Network Configuration” for examples.

9.3.4. Useful Reading

Additional helpful documentation is available at the following sites:


9.4. Managing Devices

9.4.1. Dealing with duplicate devices

As explained in Section 9.3, “Overview of Device and Module Handling”, the order in which devices with the same function appear in /dev is essentially random. E.g., if you have a USB web camera and a TV tuner, sometimes /dev/video0 refers to the camera and /dev/video1 refers to the tuner, and sometimes after a reboot the order changes. For all classes of hardware except sound cards and network cards, this is fixable by creating udev rules for custom persistent symlinks. The case of network cards is covered separately in Section 9.2, “General Network Configuration”, and sound card configuration can be found in BLFS.

For each of your devices that is likely to have this problem (even if the problem doesn’t exist in your current Linux distribution), find the corresponding directory under /sys/class or /sys/block. For video devices, this may be /sys/class/video4linux/videoX. Figure out the attributes that identify the device uniquely (usually, vendor and product IDs and/or serial numbers work):

```
udevadm info -a -p /sys/class/video4linux/video0
```

Then write rules that create the symlinks, e.g.:

```
cat > /etc/udev/rules.d/83-duplicate_devs.rules << "EOF"
# Persistent symlinks for webcam and tuner
KERNEL=="video\*", ATTRS{idProduct}=="1910", ATTRS{idVendor}=="0d81", SYMLINK=="webcam",
KERNEL=="video\*", ATTRS{device}=="0x036f", ATTRS{vendor}=="0x109e", SYMLINK=="tvtuner"
EOF
```
The result is that /dev/video0 and /dev/video1 devices still refer randomly to the tuner and the web camera (and thus should never be used directly), but there are symlinks /dev/tvtuner and /dev/webcam that always point to the correct device.

9.5. Configuring the system clock

This section discusses how to configure the systemd-timedated system service, which configures the system clock and timezone.

If you cannot remember whether or not the hardware clock is set to UTC, find out by running the `hwclock --localtime --show` command. This will display what the current time is according to the hardware clock. If this time matches whatever your watch says, then the hardware clock is set to local time. If the output from `hwclock` is not local time, chances are it is set to UTC time. Verify this by adding or subtracting the proper amount of hours for the timezone to the time shown by `hwclock`. For example, if you are currently in the MST timezone, which is also known as GMT -0700, add seven hours to the local time.

`systemd-timedated` reads `/etc/adjtime`, and depending on the contents of the file, sets the clock to either UTC or local time.

Create the `/etc/adjtime` file with the following contents if your hardware clock is set to local time:

```bash
cat > /etc/adjtime << "EOF"
0.0 0 0.0
0
LOCAL
EOF
```

If `/etc/adjtime` isn't present at first boot, `systemd-timedated` will assume that hardware clock is set to UTC and adjust the file according to that.

You can also use the `timedatectl` utility to tell `systemd-timedated` if your hardware clock is set to UTC or local time:

```bash
timedatectl set-local-rtc 1
```

`timedatectl` can also be used to change system time and time zone.

To change your current system time, issue:

```bash
timedatectl set-time YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS
```

The hardware clock will also be updated accordingly.

To change your current time zone, issue:

```bash
timedatectl set-timezone TIMEZONE
```

You can get a list of available time zones by running:

```bash
timedatectl list-timezones
```

**Note**

Please note that the `timedatectl` command can be used only on a system booted with systemd.
9.5.1. Network Time Synchronization

Starting with version 213, systemd ships a daemon called systemd-timesyncd which can be used to synchronize the system time with remote NTP servers.

The daemon is not intended as a replacement for the well established NTP daemon, but as a client only implementation of the SNTP protocol which can be used for less advanced tasks and on resource limited systems.

Starting with systemd version 216, the systemd-timesyncd daemon is enabled by default. If you want to disable it, issue the following command:

```
systemctl disable systemd-timesyncd
```

The /etc/systemd/timesyncd.conf file can be used to change the NTP servers that systemd-timesyncd synchronizes with.

Please note that when system clock is set to Local Time, systemd-timesyncd won't update hardware clock.

9.6. Configuring the Linux Console

This section discusses how to configure the systemd-vconsole-setup system service, which configures the virtual console font and console keymap.

The systemd-vconsole-setup service reads the /etc/vconsole.conf file for configuration information. Decide which keymap and screen font will be used. Various language-specific HOWTOs can also help with this, see http://www.tldp.org/HOWTO/HOWTO-INDEX/other-lang.html. Examine the output of `localectl list-keymaps` for a list of valid console keymaps. Look in the /usr/share/consolefonts directory for valid screen fonts.

The /etc/vconsole.conf file should contain lines of the form: VARIABLE="value". The following variables are recognized:

- **KEYMAP**
  This variable specifies the key mapping table for the keyboard. If unset, it defaults to us.

- **KEYMAP_TOGGLE**
  This variable can be used to configure a second toggle keymap and is unset by default.

- **FONT**
  This variable specifies the font used by the virtual console.

- **FONT_MAP**
  This variable specifies the console map to be used.

- **FONT_UNIMAP**
  This variable specifies the Unicode font map.

An example for a German keyboard and console is given below:

```
cat > /etc/vconsole.conf << "EOF"
KEYMAP=de-latin1
FONT=Lat2-Terminus16
EOF
```
You can change KEYMAP value at runtime by using the `localectl` utility:

```
localectl set-keymap MAP
```

**Note**

Please note that the `localectl` command can be used only on a system booted with systemd.

You can also use `localectl` utility with the corresponding parameters to change X11 keyboard layout, model, variant and options:

```
localectl set-x11-keymap LAYOUT [MODEL] [VARIANT] [OPTIONS]
```

To list possible values for `localectl set-x11-keymap` parameters, run `localectl` with parameters listed below:

- `list-x11-keymap-models`
  - Shows known X11 keyboard mapping models.
- `list-x11-keymap-layouts`
  - Shows known X11 keyboard mapping layouts.
- `list-x11-keymap-variants`
  - Shows known X11 keyboard mapping variants.
- `list-x11-keymap-options`
  - Shows known X11 keyboard mapping options.

**Note**

Using any of the parameters listed above requires the XKeyboard-Config package from BLFS.

### 9.7. Configuring the System Locale

The `/etc/locale.conf` file below sets some environment variables necessary for native language support. Setting them properly results in:

- The output of programs being translated into your native language
- The correct classification of characters into letters, digits and other classes. This is necessary for `bash` to properly accept non-ASCII characters in command lines in non-English locales
- The correct alphabetical sorting order for the country
- The appropriate default paper size
- The correct formatting of monetary, time, and date values

Replace `<ll>` below with the two-letter code for your desired language (e.g., “en”) and `<CC>` with the two-letter code for the appropriate country (e.g., “GB”). `<charmap>` should be replaced with the canonical charmap for your chosen locale. Optional modifiers such as “@euro” may also be present.

The list of all locales supported by Glibc can be obtained by running the following command:

```
locale -a
```
Charmaps can have a number of aliases, e.g., “ISO-8859-1” is also referred to as “iso8859-1” and “iso88591”. Some applications cannot handle the various synonyms correctly (e.g., require that “UTF-8” is written as “UTF-8”, not “utf8”), so it is the safest in most cases to choose the canonical name for a particular locale. To determine the canonical name, run the following command, where `<locale name>` is the output given by `locale -a` for your preferred locale (“en_GB.iso88591” in our example).

```
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale charmap
```

For the “en_GB.iso88591” locale, the above command will print:

```
ISO-8859-1
```

This results in a final locale setting of “en_GB.ISO-8859-1”. It is important that the locale found using the heuristic above is tested prior to it being added to the Bash startup files:

```
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale language
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale charmap
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale int_curr_symbol
LC_ALL=<locale name> locale int_prefix
```

The above commands should print the language name, the character encoding used by the locale, the local currency, and the prefix to dial before the telephone number in order to get into the country. If any of the commands above fail with a message similar to the one shown below, this means that your locale was either not installed in Chapter 6 or is not supported by the default installation of Glibc.

```
locale: Cannot set LC_* to default locale: No such file or directory
```

If this happens, you should either install the desired locale using the `localedef` command, or consider choosing a different locale. Further instructions assume that there are no such error messages from Glibc.

Some packages beyond LFS may also lack support for your chosen locale. One example is the X library (part of the X Window System), which outputs the following error message if the locale does not exactly match one of the character map names in its internal files:

```
Warning: locale not supported by Xlib, locale set to C
```

In several cases Xlib expects that the character map will be listed in uppercase notation with canonical dashes. For instance, "ISO-8859-1" rather than "iso88591". It is also possible to find an appropriate specification by removing the charmap part of the locale specification. This can be checked by running the `locale charmap` command in both locales. For example, one would have to change "de_DE.ISO-8859-15@euro" to "de_DE@euro" in order to get this locale recognized by Xlib.

Other packages can also function incorrectly (but may not necessarily display any error messages) if the locale name does not meet their expectations. In those cases, investigating how other Linux distributions support your locale might provide some useful information.

Once the proper locale settings have been determined, create the `/etc/locale.conf` file:

```
cat > /etc/locale.conf << "EOF"
LANG=<ll>_<CC>.<charmap><@modifiers>
EOF
```
Note that you can modify /etc/locale.conf with the systemd `localectl` utility. To use `localectl` for the example above, run:

```
localectl set-locale LANG="<ll>_<CC>.<charmap>@modifiers"
```

You can also specify other language specific environment variables such as LANG, LC_CTYPE, LC_NUMERIC or any other environment variable from `locale` output. Just separate them with a space. An example where LANG is set as en_US.UTF-8 but LC_CTYPE is set as just en_US is:

```
localectl set-locale LANG="en_US.UTF-8" LC_CTYPE="en_US"
```

Note

Please note that the `localectl` command can be used only on a system booted with systemd.

The “C” (default) and “en_US” (the recommended one for United States English users) locales are different. “C” uses the US-ASCII 7-bit character set, and treats bytes with the high bit set as invalid characters. That's why, e.g., the `ls` command substitutes them with question marks in that locale. Also, an attempt to send mail with such characters from Mutt or Pine results in non-RFC-conforming messages being sent (the charset in the outgoing mail is indicated as “unknown 8-bit”). It's suggested that you use the “C” locale only if you are certain that you will never need 8-bit characters.

9.8. Creating the /etc/inputrc File

The `inputrc` file is the configuration file for the readline library, which provides editing capabilities while the user is entering a line from the terminal. It works by translating keyboard inputs into specific actions. Readline is used by bash and most other shells as well as many other applications.

Most people do not need user-specific functionality so the command below creates a global /etc/inputrc used by everyone who logs in. If you later decide you need to override the defaults on a per user basis, you can create a .inputrc file in the user's home directory with the modified mappings.

For more information on how to edit the inputrc file, see `info bash` under the `Readline Init File` section. `info readline` is also a good source of information.
Below is a generic global `inputrc` along with comments to explain what the various options do. Note that comments cannot be on the same line as commands. Create the file using the following command:

```bash
cat > /etc/inputrc << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/inputrc
# Modified by Chris Lynn <roryo@roryo.dynup.net>

# Allow the command prompt to wrap to the next line
set horizontal-scroll-mode Off

# Enable 8bit input
set meta-flag On
set input-meta On

# Turns off 8th bit stripping
set convert-meta Off

# Keep the 8th bit for display
set output-meta On

# none, visible or audible
set bell-style none

# All of the following map the escape sequence of the value
# contained in the 1st argument to the readline specific functions
"\eOd": backward-word
"\eOc": forward-word

# for linux console
"\e[1~": beginning-of-line
"\e[4~": end-of-line
"\e[5~": beginning-of-history
"\e[6~": end-of-history
"\e[3~": delete-char
"\e[2~": quoted-insert

# for xterm
"\eOH": beginning-of-line
"\eOF": end-of-line

# for Konsole
"\e[H": beginning-of-line
"\e[F": end-of-line

# End /etc/inputrc
EOF
```
9.9. Creating the /etc/shells File

The shells file contains a list of login shells on the system. Applications use this file to determine whether a shell is valid. For each shell a single line should be present, consisting of the shell's path relative to the root of the directory structure (/).

For example, this file is consulted by chsh to determine whether an unprivileged user may change the login shell for her own account. If the command name is not listed, the user will be denied the ability to change shells.

It is a requirement for applications such as GDM which does not populate the face browser if it can't find /etc/shells, or FTP daemons which traditionally disallow access to users with shells not included in this file.

```
cat > /etc/shells << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/shells
/bin/sh
/bin/bash
# End /etc/shells
EOF
```

9.10. Systemd Usage and Configuration

9.10.1. Basic Configuration

The /etc/systemd/system.conf file contains a set of options to control basic systemd operations. The default file has all entries commented out with the default settings indicated. This file is where the log level may be changed as well as some basic logging settings. See the systemd-system.conf(5) manual page for details on each configuration option.

9.10.2. Disabling Screen Clearing at Boot Time

The normal behavior for systemd is to clear the screen at the end of the boot sequence. If desired, this behavior may be changed by running the following command:

```
mkdir -pv /etc/systemd/system/getty@tty1.service.d

cat > /etc/systemd/system/getty@tty1.service.d/noclear.conf << EOF
[Service]
TTYVTDisallocate=no
EOF
```

The boot messages can always be reviewed by using the journalctl -b command as the root user.

9.10.3. Disabling tmpfs for /tmp

By default, /tmp is created as a tmpfs. If this is not desired, it can be overridden by executing the following command:

```
ln -sfv /dev/null /etc/systemd/system/tmp.mount
```
Alternatively, if a separate partition for `/tmp` is desired, specify that partition in a `/etc/fstab` entry.

**Warning**

Do not create the symbolic link above if a separate partition is used for `/tmp`. This will prevent the root file system (`/`) from being remounted r/w and make the system unusable when booted.

### 9.10.4. Configuring Automatic File Creation and Deletion

There are several services that create or delete files or directories:

- `systemd-tmpfiles-clean.service`
- `systemd-tmpfiles-setup-dev.service`
- `systemd-tmpfiles-setup.service`

The system location for the configuration files is `/usr/lib/tmpfiles.d/*.conf`. The local configuration files are in `/etc/tmpfiles.d`. Files in `/etc/tmpfiles.d` override files with the same name in `/usr/lib/tmpfiles.d`. See `tmpfiles.d(5)` manual page for file format details.

Note that the syntax for the `/usr/lib/tmpfiles.d/*.conf` files can be confusing. For example, the default deletion of files in the `/tmp` directory is located in `/usr/lib/tmpfiles.d/tmp.conf` with the line:

```
q /tmp 1777 root root 10d
```

The type field, q, discusses creating a subvolume with quotas which is really only applicable to btrfs filesystems. It references type v which in turn references type d (directory). This then creates the specified directory if it is not present and adjusts the permissions and ownership as specified. Contents of the directory will be subject to time based cleanup if the age argument is specified.

If the default parameters are not desired, then the file should be copied to `/etc/tmpfiles.d` and edited as desired. For example:

```
mkdir -p /etc/tmpfiles.d
cp /usr/lib/tmpfiles.d/tmp.conf /etc/tmpfiles.d
```

### 9.10.5. Overriding Default Services Behavior

The parameters of a unit can be overridden by creating a directory and a configuration file in `/etc/systemd/system`. For example:

```
mkdir -pv /etc/systemd/system/foobar.service.d
cat > /etc/systemd/system/foobar.service.d/foobar.conf << EOF
[Service]
Restart=always
RestartSec=30
EOF
```

See `systemd.unit(5)` manual page for more information. After creating the configuration file, run `systemctl daemon-reload` and `systemctl restart foobar` to activate the changes to a service.
9.10.6. Debugging the Boot Sequence

Rather than plain shell scripts used in SysVinit or BSD style init systems, systemd uses a unified format for different types of startup files (or units). The command `systemctl` is used to enable, disable, control state, and obtain status of unit files. Here are some examples of frequently used commands:

- `systemctl list-units -t <service> [-all]`: lists loaded unit files of type service.
- `systemctl list-units -t <target> [-all]`: lists loaded unit files of type target.
- `systemctl show -p Wants <multi-user.target>`: shows all units that depend on the multi-user target. Targets are special unit files that are analogous to runlevels under SysVinit.
- `systemctl status <servicename.service>`: shows the status of the servicename service. The .service extension can be omitted if there are no other unit files with the same name, such as .socket files (which create a listening socket that provides similar functionality to inetd/xinetd).

9.10.7. Working with the Systemd Journal

Logging on a system booted with systemd is handled with systemd-journald (by default), rather than a typical unix syslog daemon. You can also add a normal syslog daemon and have both operate side by side if desired. The systemd-journald program stores journal entries in a binary format rather than a plain text log file. To assist with parsing the file, the command `journalctl` is provided. Here are some examples of frequently used commands:

- `journalctl -r`: shows all contents of the journal in reverse chronological order.
- `journalctl -u UNIT`: shows the journal entries associated with the specified UNIT file.
- `journalctl -b[=ID] -r`: shows the journal entries since last successful boot (or for boot ID) in reverse chronological order.
- `journalctl -f`: provides functionality similar to tail -f (follow).

9.10.8. Working with Core Dumps

Core dumps are useful to debug crashed programs, especially when a daemon process crashes. On systemd booted systems the core dumping is handled by `systemd-coredump`. It will log the core dump in the journal and store the core dump itself in `/var/lib/systemd/coredump`. To retrieve and process core dumps, the `coredumpctl` tool is provided. Here are some examples of frequently used commands:

- `coredumpctl -r`: lists all core dumps in reverse chronological order.
- `coredumpctl -l info`: shows the information from the last core dump.
- `coredumpctl -l debug`: loads the last core dump into GDB.

Core dumps may use a lot of disk space. The maximum disk space used by core dumps can be limited by creating a configuration file in `/etc/systemd/coredump.conf.d`. For example:

```bash
mkdir -pv /etc/systemd/coredump.conf.d

cat > /etc/systemd/coredump.conf.d/maxuse.conf << EOF
[Coredump]
MaxUse=5G
EOF
```
See the `systemd-coredump(8)`, `coredumpctl(1)`, and `coredump.conf.d(5)` manual pages for more information.

### 9.10.9. Long Running Processes

Beginning with systemd-230, all user processes are killed when a user session is ended, even if nohup is used, or the process uses the `daemon()` or `setsid()` functions. This is a deliberate change from a historically permissive environment to a more restrictive one. The new behavior may cause issues if you depend on long running programs (e.g., `screen` or `tmux`) to remain active after ending your user session. There are three ways to enable lingering processes to remain after a user session is ended.

- **Enable process lingering for only selected users**: Normal users have permission to enable process lingering with the command `loginctl enable-linger` for their own user. System administrators can use the same command with a `user` argument to enable for a user. That user can then use the `systemd-run` command to start long running processes. For example: `systemd-run --scope --user /usr/bin/screen`. If you enable lingering for your user, the `user@.service` will remain even after all login sessions are closed, and will automatically start at system boot. This has the advantage of explicitly allowing and disallowing processes to run after the user session has ended, but breaks backwards compatibility with tools like `nohup` and utilities that use `daemon()`.

- **Enable system-wide process lingering**: You can set `KillUserProcesses=no` in `/etc/systemd/logind.conf` to enable process lingering globally for all users. This has the benefit of leaving the old method available to all users at the expense of explicit control.

- **Disable at build-time**: You can disable lingering by default while building systemd by adding the switch `-Ddefault-kill-user-processes=false` to the `meson` command for systemd. This completely disables the ability of systemd to kill user processes at session end.
Chapter 10. Making the LFS System Bootable

10.1. Introduction

It is time to make the LFS system bootable. This chapter discusses creating the /etc/fstab file, building a kernel for the new LFS system, and installing the GRUB boot loader so that the LFS system can be selected for booting at startup.

10.2. Creating the /etc/fstab File

The /etc/fstab file is used by some programs to determine where file systems are to be mounted by default, in which order, and which must be checked (for integrity errors) prior to mounting. Create a new file systems table like this:

```
cat > /etc/fstab << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/fstab
# file system  mount-point  type     options             dump  fsck
#                                                              order
/dev/<xxx>   /        <fff> defaults            1     1
/dev/<yyy>   swap      swap     pri=1               0     0
# End /etc/fstab
EOF
```

Replace <xxx>, <yyy>, and <fff> with the values appropriate for the system, for example, sda2, sda5, and ext4. For details on the six fields in this file, see man 5 fstab.

Filesystems with MS-DOS or Windows origin (i.e. vfat, ntfs, smbfs, cifs, iso9660, udf) need a special option, utf8, in order for non-ASCII characters in file names to be interpreted properly. For non-UTF-8 locales, the value of iocharset should be set to be the same as the character set of the locale, adjusted in such a way that the kernel understands it. This works if the relevant character set definition (found under File systems -> Native Language Support when configuring the kernel) has been compiled into the kernel or built as a module. However, if the character set of the locale is UTF-8, the corresponding option iocharset=utf8 would make the file system case sensitive. To fix this, use the special option utf8 instead of iocharset=utf8, for UTF-8 locales. The “codepage” option is also needed for vfat and smbfs filesystems. It should be set to the codepage number used under MS-DOS in your country. For example, in order to mount USB flash drives, a ru_RU.KOI8-R user would need the following in the options portion of its mount line in /etc/fstab:

```
noauto,user,quiet,showexec,codepage=866,iocharset=koi8r
```

The corresponding options fragment for ru_RU.UTF-8 users is:

```
noauto,user,quiet,showexec,codepage=866,utf8
```

Note that using iocharset is the default for iso8859-1 (which keeps the file system case insensitive), and the utf8 option tells the kernel to convert the file names using UTF-8 so they can be interpreted in the UTF-8 locale.
It is also possible to specify default codepage and iocharset values for some filesystems during kernel configuration. The relevant parameters are named “Default NLS Option” (CONFIG_NLS_DEFAULT), “Default Remote NLS Option” (CONFIG_SMB_NLS_DEFAULT), “Default codepage for FAT” (CONFIG_FAT_DEFAULT_CODEPAGE), and “Default iocharset for FAT” (CONFIG_FAT_DEFAULT_IOCHARSET). There is no way to specify these settings for the ntfs filesystem at kernel compilation time.

It is possible to make the ext3 filesystem reliable across power failures for some hard disk types. To do this, add the barrier=1 mount option to the appropriate entry in /etc/fstab. To check if the disk drive supports this option, run `hdparm` on the applicable disk drive. For example, if:

```
hdparm -I /dev/sda | grep NCQ
```

returns non-empty output, the option is supported.

Note: Logical Volume Management (LVM) based partitions cannot use the barrier option.
### 10.3. Linux-5.10.17

The Linux package contains the Linux kernel.

**Approximate build time:** 5.0 - 125.0 SBU (typically about 9 SBU)

**Required disk space:** 1200 - 6750 MB (typically about 1500 MB)

#### 10.3.1. Installation of the kernel

Building the kernel involves a few steps—configuration, compilation, and installation. Read the README file in the kernel source tree for alternative methods to the way this book configures the kernel.

Prepare for compilation by running the following command:

```make
make mrproper
```

This ensures that the kernel tree is absolutely clean. The kernel team recommends that this command be issued prior to each kernel compilation. Do not rely on the source tree being clean after un-tarring.

There are several ways to configure the kernel options. Usually, this is done through a menu-driven interface, for example:

```make
make menuconfig
```

The meaning of optional make environment variables:

```
LANG=<host_LANG_value> LC_ALL=
```

This establishes the locale setting to the one used on the host. This may be needed for a proper menuconfig ncurses interface line drawing on a UTF-8 linux text console.

If used, be sure to replace `<host_LANG_value>` by the value of the `$LANG` variable from your host. You can alternatively use instead the host's value of `$LC_ALL` or `$LC_CTYPE`.

```make
make menuconfig
```

This launches an ncurses menu-driven interface. For other (graphical) interfaces, type `make help`.

Note
A good starting place for setting up the kernel configuration is to run `make defconfig`. This will set the base configuration to a good state that takes your current system architecture into account.

Be sure to enable/disable/set the following features or the system might not work correctly or boot at all:

```
General setup -->
[ ] Auditing Support [CONFIG_AUDIT]
[*] Control Group support [CONFIG_CGROUPS]
[ ] Enable deprecated sysfs features to support old userspace tools [CONFIG_SYSFS_DEPRECATED]
[*] Configure standard kernel features (expert users) [CONFIG_EXPERT] -->
[ ] open by fHANDLE syscalls [CONFIG_FHANDLE]
Processor type and features -->
[*] Enable seccomp to safely compute untrusted bytecode [CONFIG_SECCOMP]
Firmware Drivers -->
[*] Export DMI identification via sysfs to userspace [CONFIG_DMIID]
Networking support -->
Networking options -->
<*> The IPv6 protocol [CONFIG_IPV6]
Device Drivers -->
Generic Driver Options -->
[ ] Support for uevent helper [CONFIG_UEVENT_HELPER]
[*] Maintain a devtmpfs filesystem to mount at /dev [CONFIG_DEVTMPFS]
Firmware Loader -->
[ ] Enable the firmware sysfs fallback mechanism [CONFIG_FW_LOADER_USER_HELPER]
File systems -->
[*] Inotify support for userspace [CONFIG_INOTIFY_USER]
Pseudo filesystems -->
[ ] Tmpfs POSIX Access Control Lists [CONFIG_TMPFS_POSIX_ACL]
```

Note
While "The IPv6 Protocol" is not strictly required, it is highly recommended by the systemd developers.

Note
If your host hardware is using UEFI, then the 'make defconfig' above should automatically add in some EFI-related kernel options.

In order to allow your LFS kernel to be booted from within your host's UEFI boot environment, your kernel must have this option selected:

```
Processor type and features -->
[*] EFI stub support [CONFIG_EFI_STUB]
```

A fuller description of managing UEFI environments from within LFS is covered by the lfs-uefi.txt hint at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/lfs-uefi.txt.
The rationale for the above configuration items:

**Support for uevent helper**

Having this option set may interfere with device management when using Udev/Eudev.

**Maintain a devtmpfs**

This will create automated device nodes which are populated by the kernel, even without Udev running. Udev then runs on top of this, managing permissions and adding symlinks. This configuration item is required for all users of Udev/Eudev.

Alternatively, **make oldconfig** may be more appropriate in some situations. See the README file for more information.

If desired, skip kernel configuration by copying the kernel config file, `.config`, from the host system (assuming it is available) to the unpacked `linux-5.10.17` directory. However, we do not recommend this option. It is often better to explore all the configuration menus and create the kernel configuration from scratch.

Compile the kernel image and modules:

```
make
```

If using kernel modules, module configuration in `/etc/modprobe.d` may be required. Information pertaining to modules and kernel configuration is located in Section 9.3, “Overview of Device and Module Handling” and in the kernel documentation in the `linux-5.10.17/Documentation` directory. Also, `modprobe.d(5)` may be of interest.

Unless module support has been disabled in the kernel configuration, install the modules with:

```
make modules_install
```

After kernel compilation is complete, additional steps are required to complete the installation. Some files need to be copied to the `/boot` directory.

**Caution**

If the host system has a separate `/boot` partition, the files copied below should go there. The easiest way to do that is to bind `/boot` on the host (outside chroot) to `/mnt/lfs/boot` before proceeding. As the root user in the host system:

```
mount --bind /boot /mnt/lfs/boot
```

The path to the kernel image may vary depending on the platform being used. The filename below can be changed to suit your taste, but the stem of the filename should be `vmlinuz` to be compatible with the automatic setup of the boot process described in the next section. The following command assumes an x86 architecture:

```
cp -iv arch/x86/boot/bzImage /boot/vmlinuz-5.10.17-lfs-10.1-systemd
```

`System.map` is a symbol file for the kernel. It maps the function entry points of every function in the kernel API, as well as the addresses of the kernel data structures for the running kernel. It is used as a resource when investigating kernel problems. Issue the following command to install the map file:

```
cp -iv System.map /boot/System.map-5.10.17
```
The kernel configuration file `.config` produced by the `make menuconfig` step above contains all the configuration selections for the kernel that was just compiled. It is a good idea to keep this file for future reference:

```
cp -iv .config /boot/config-5.10.17
```

Install the documentation for the Linux kernel:

```
install -d /usr/share/doc/linux-5.10.17
cp -r Documentation/* /usr/share/doc/linux-5.10.17
```

It is important to note that the files in the kernel source directory are not owned by `root`. Whenever a package is unpacked as user `root` (like we did inside chroot), the files have the user and group IDs of whatever they were on the packager's computer. This is usually not a problem for any other package to be installed because the source tree is removed after the installation. However, the Linux source tree is often retained for a long time. Because of this, there is a chance that whatever user ID the packager used will be assigned to somebody on the machine. That person would then have write access to the kernel source.

**Note**

In many cases, the configuration of the kernel will need to be updated for packages that will be installed later in BLFS. Unlike other packages, it is not necessary to remove the kernel source tree after the newly built kernel is installed.

If the kernel source tree is going to be retained, run `chown -R 0:0` on the `linux-5.10.17` directory to ensure all files are owned by user `root`.

**Warning**

Some kernel documentation recommends creating a symlink from `/usr/src/linux` pointing to the kernel source directory. This is specific to kernels prior to the 2.6 series and must not be created on an LFS system as it can cause problems for packages you may wish to build once your base LFS system is complete.

**Warning**

The headers in the system's `include` directory (`/usr/include`) should always be the ones against which Glibc was compiled, that is, the sanitised headers installed in Section 5.4, “Linux-5.10.17 API Headers”. Therefore, they should never be replaced by either the raw kernel headers or any other kernel sanitized headers.

### 10.3.2. Configuring Linux Module Load Order

Most of the time Linux modules are loaded automatically, but sometimes it needs some specific direction. The program that loads modules, `modprobe` or `insmod`, uses `/etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf` for this purpose. This file needs to be created so that if the USB drivers (ehci_hcd, ohci_hcd and uhci_hcd) have been built as modules, they will be loaded in the correct order; `ehci_hcd` needs to be loaded prior to `ohci_hcd` and `uhci_hcd` in order to avoid a warning being output at boot time.
Create a new file `/etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf` by running the following:

```
install -v -m755 -d /etc/modprobe.d

cat > /etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf << "EOF"
# Begin /etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf
install ohci_hcd /sbin/modprobe ehci_hcd ; /sbin/modprobe -i ohci_hcd ; true
install uhci_hcd /sbin/modprobe ehci_hcd ; /sbin/modprobe -i uhci_hcd ; true

# End /etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf
EOF
```

### 10.3.3. Contents of Linux

**Installed files:** config-5.10.17, vmlinuz-5.10.17-lfs-10.1-systemd, and System.map-5.10.17  
**Installed directories:** /lib/modules, /usr/share/doc/linux-5.10.17

#### Short Descriptions

- **config-5.10.17**
  - Contains all the configuration selections for the kernel

- **vmlinuz-5.10.17-lfs-10.1-systemd**
  - The engine of the Linux system. When turning on the computer, the kernel is the first part of the operating system that gets loaded. It detects and initializes all components of the computer's hardware, then makes these components available as a tree of files to the software and turns a single CPU into a multitasking machine capable of running scores of programs seemingly at the same time

- **System.map-5.10.17**
  - A list of addresses and symbols; it maps the entry points and addresses of all the functions and data structures in the kernel
10.4. Using GRUB to Set Up the Boot Process

10.4.1. Introduction

**Warning**

Configuring GRUB incorrectly can render your system inoperable without an alternate boot device such as a CD-ROM or bootable USB drive. This section is not required to boot your LFS system. You may just want to modify your current boot loader, e.g. Grub-Legacy, GRUB2, or LILO.

Ensure that an emergency boot disk is ready to “rescue” the computer if the computer becomes unusable (un-bootable). If you do not already have a boot device, you can create one. In order for the procedure below to work, you need to jump ahead to BLFS and install **xorriso** from the **libisoburn** package.

```
cd /tmp
grub-mkrescue --output=grub-img.iso
xorriso -as cdrecord -v dev=/dev/cdrw blank=as_needed grub-img.iso
```

**Note**

To boot LFS on host systems that have UEFI enabled, the kernel needs to have been built with the `CONFIG_EFI_STUB` capability described in the previous section. However, LFS can be booted using GRUB2 without such an addition. To do this, the UEFI Mode and Secure Boot capabilities in the host system’s BIOS need to be turned off. For details, see the **lfs-uefi.txt** hint at http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/lfs-uefi.txt.

10.4.2. GRUB Naming Conventions

GRUB uses its own naming structure for drives and partitions in the form of \((hdn,m)\), where \(n\) is the hard drive number and \(m\) is the partition number. The hard drive number starts from zero, but the partition number starts from one for normal partitions and five for extended partitions. Note that this is different from earlier versions where both numbers started from zero. For example, partition \(\text{sda1}\) is \((hd0,1)\) to GRUB and \(\text{sdb3}\) is \((hd1,3)\). In contrast to Linux, GRUB does not consider CD-ROM drives to be hard drives. For example, if using a CD on \(\text{hdb}\) and a second hard drive on \(\text{hdc}\), that second hard drive would still be \((hd1)\).

10.4.3. Setting Up the Configuration

GRUB works by writing data to the first physical track of the hard disk. This area is not part of any file system. The programs there access GRUB modules in the boot partition. The default location is `/boot/grub/`.

The location of the boot partition is a choice of the user that affects the configuration. One recommendation is to have a separate small (suggested size is 200 MB) partition just for boot information. That way each build, whether LFS or some commercial distro, can access the same boot files and access can be made from any booted system. If you choose to do this, you will need to mount the separate partition, move all files in the current `/boot` directory (e.g. the linux kernel you just built in the previous section) to the new partition. You will then need to unmount the partition and remount it as `/boot`. If you do this, be sure to update `/etc/fstab`.

Using the current `lfs` partition will also work, but configuration for multiple systems is more difficult.

Using the above information, determine the appropriate designator for the root partition (or boot partition, if a separate one is used). For the following example, it is assumed that the root (or separate boot) partition is `sda2`.

255
Install the GRUB files into `/boot/grub` and set up the boot track:

```
Warning
The following command will overwrite the current boot loader. Do not run the command if this is not desired, for example, if using a third party boot manager to manage the Master Boot Record (MBR).
```

```
grub-install /dev/sda
```

```
Note
If the system has been booted using UEFI, `grub-install` will try to install files for the `x86_64-efi` target, but those files have not been installed in chapter 6. If this is the case, add `--target i386-pc` to the command above.
```

### 10.4.4. Creating the GRUB Configuration File

Generate `/boot/grub/grub.cfg`:

```
cat > /boot/grub/grub.cfg << "EOF"
# Begin /boot/grub/grub.cfg
set default=0
set timeout=5

insmod ext2
set root=(hd0,2)

menuentry "GNU/Linux, Linux 5.10.17-lfs-10.1-systemd" {
    linux   /boot/vmlinuz-5.10.17-lfs-10.1-systemd root=/dev/sda2 ro
}
EOF
```

```
Note
From GRUB’s perspective, the kernel files are relative to the partition used. If you used a separate `/boot` partition, remove `/boot` from the above `linux` line. You will also need to change the `set root` line to point to the boot partition.
```

GRUB is an extremely powerful program and it provides a tremendous number of options for booting from a wide variety of devices, operating systems, and partition types. There are also many options for customization such as graphical splash screens, playing sounds, mouse input, etc. The details of these options are beyond the scope of this introduction.

```
Caution
There is a command, `grub-mkconfig`, that can write a configuration file automatically. It uses a set of scripts in `/etc/grub.d/` and will destroy any customizations that you make. These scripts are designed primarily for non-source distributions and are not recommended for LFS. If you install a commercial Linux distribution, there is a good chance that this program will be run. Be sure to back up your `grub.cfg` file.
```

256
Chapter 11. The End

11.1. The End

Well done! The new LFS system is installed! We wish you much success with your shiny new custom-built Linux system.

It may be a good idea to create an `/etc/lfs-release` file. By having this file, it is very easy for you (and for us if you need to ask for help at some point) to find out which LFS version is installed on the system. Create this file by running:

```
    echo 10.1-systemd > /etc/lfs-release
```

Two files describing the installed system may be used by packages that can be installed on the system later, either in binary form or by building them.

The first one shows the status of your new system with respect to the Linux Standards Base (LSB). To create this file, run:

```
cat > /etc/lsb-release << "EOF"
DISTRIB_ID="Linux From Scratch"
DISTRIB_RELEASE="10.1-systemd"
DISTRIB_CODENAME="<your name here>"
DISTRIB_DESCRIPTION="Linux From Scratch"
EOF
```

The second one contains roughly the same information, and is used by systemd and some graphical desktop environments. To create this file, run:

```
cat > /etc/os-release << "EOF"
NAME="Linux From Scratch"
VERSION="10.1-systemd"
ID=lfs
PRETTY_NAME="Linux From Scratch 10.1-systemd"
VERSION_CODENAME="<your name here>"
EOF
```

Be sure to put some sort of customization for the fields 'DISTRIBUTION_CODENAME' and 'VERSION_CODENAME' to make the system uniquely yours.

11.2. Get Counted

Now that you have finished the book, do you want to be counted as an LFS user? Head over to http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/cgi-bin/lfscounter.php and register as an LFS user by entering your name and the first LFS version you have used.

Let's reboot into LFS now.
11.3. Rebooting the System

Now that all of the software has been installed, it is time to reboot your computer. However, you should be aware of a few things. The system you have created in this book is quite minimal, and most likely will not have the functionality you would need to be able to continue forward. By installing a few extra packages from the BLFS book while still in our current chroot environment, you can leave yourself in a much better position to continue on once you reboot into your new LFS installation. Here are some suggestions:

- A text mode browser such as Lynx will allow you to easily view the BLFS book in one virtual terminal, while building packages in another.
- The GPM package will allow you to perform copy/paste actions in your virtual terminals.
- If you are in a situation where static IP configuration does not meet your networking requirements, installing a package such as dhcpcd or the client portion of dhcp may be useful.
- Installing sudo may be useful for building packages as a non-root user and easily installing the resulting packages in your new system.
- If you want to access your new system from a remote system within a comfortable GUI environment, install openssh.
- To make fetching files over the internet easier, install wget.
- Finally, a review of the following configuration files is also appropriate at this point.
  - /etc/bashrc
  - /etc/dircolors
  - /etc/fstab
  - /etc/hosts
  - /etc/inputrc
  - /etc/profile
  - /etc/resolv.conf
  - /etc/vimrc
  - /root/.bash_profile
  - /root/.bashrc

Now that we have said that, let's move on to booting our shiny new LFS installation for the first time! First exit from the chroot environment:

```
logout
```

Unmount the LFS file system hierarchy:

```
umount -Rv $LFS
```

Now, reboot the system with:

```
shutdown -r now
```

Assuming the GRUB boot loader was set up as outlined earlier, the menu is set to boot LFS 10.1 automatically. When the reboot is complete, the LFS system is ready for use and more software may be added to suit your needs.
11.4. What Now?

Thank you for reading this LFS book. We hope that you have found this book helpful and have learned more about the system creation process.

Now that the LFS system is installed, you may be wondering “What next?” To answer that question, we have compiled a list of resources for you.

• Maintenance

   Bugs and security notices are reported regularly for all software. Since an LFS system is compiled from source, it is up to you to keep abreast of such reports. There are several online resources that track such reports, some of which are shown below:

   • CERT (Computer Emergency Response Team)

       CERT has a mailing list that publishes security alerts concerning various operating systems and applications. Subscription information is available at [http://www.us-cert.gov/cas/signup.html](http://www.us-cert.gov/cas/signup.html).

   • Bugtraq

       Bugtraq is a full-disclosure computer security mailing list. It publishes newly discovered security issues, and occasionally potential fixes for them. Subscription information is available at [http://www.securityfocus.com/archive](http://www.securityfocus.com/archive).

• Beyond Linux From Scratch

   The Beyond Linux From Scratch book covers installation procedures for a wide range of software beyond the scope of the LFS Book. The BLFS project is located at [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/blfs/view/10.1/).

• LFS Hints

   The LFS Hints are a collection of educational documents submitted by volunteers in the LFS community. The hints are available at [http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/](http://www.linuxfromscratch.org/hints/downloads/files/).

• Mailing lists

   There are several LFS mailing lists you may subscribe to if you are in need of help, want to stay current with the latest developments, want to contribute to the project, and more. See Chapter 1 - Mailing Lists for more information.

• The Linux Documentation Project

   The goal of The Linux Documentation Project (TLDP) is to collaborate on all of the issues of Linux documentation. The TLDP features a large collection of HOWTOs, guides, and man pages. It is located at [http://www.tldp.org/](http://www.tldp.org/).
Part V. Appendices
### Appendix A. Acronyms and Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABI</td>
<td>Application Binary Interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALFS</td>
<td>Automated Linux From Scratch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API</td>
<td>Application Programming Interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASCII</td>
<td>American Standard Code for Information Interchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOS</td>
<td>Basic Input/Output System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLFS</td>
<td>Beyond Linux From Scratch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSD</td>
<td>Berkeley Software Distribution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chroot</td>
<td>change root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMOS</td>
<td>Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COS</td>
<td>Class Of Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Central Processing Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRC</td>
<td>Cyclic Redundancy Check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVS</td>
<td>Concurrent Versions System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS</td>
<td>Domain Name Service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGA</td>
<td>Enhanced Graphics Adapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELF</td>
<td>Executable and Linkable Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EOF</td>
<td>End of File</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EQN</td>
<td>equation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ext2</td>
<td>second extended file system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ext3</td>
<td>third extended file system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ext4</td>
<td>fourth extended file system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAQ</td>
<td>Frequently Asked Questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHS</td>
<td>Filesystem Hierarchy Standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIFO</td>
<td>First-In, First Out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FQDN</td>
<td>Fully Qualified Domain Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP</td>
<td>File Transfer Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB</td>
<td>Gigabytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCC</td>
<td>GNU Compiler Collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GID</td>
<td>Group Identifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GMT</td>
<td>Greenwich Mean Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTML</td>
<td>Hypertext Markup Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDE</td>
<td>Integrated Drive Electronics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEEE</td>
<td>Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IO  Input/Output
IP  Internet Protocol
IPC Inter-Process Communication
IRC Internet Relay Chat
ISO International Organization for Standardization
ISP Internet Service Provider
KB Kilobytes
LED Light Emitting Diode
LFS Linux From Scratch
LSB Linux Standard Base
MB Megabytes
MBR Master Boot Record
MD5 Message Digest 5
NIC Network Interface Card
NLS Native Language Support
NNTP Network News Transport Protocol
NPTL Native POSIX Threading Library
OSS Open Sound System
PCH Pre-Compiled Headers
PCRE Perl Compatible Regular Expression
PID Process Identifier
PTY pseudo terminal
QOS Quality Of Service
RAM Random Access Memory
RPC Remote Procedure Call
RTC Real Time Clock
SBU Standard Build Unit
SCO The Santa Cruz Operation
SHA1 Secure-Hash Algorithm 1
TLDP The Linux Documentation Project
TFTP Trivial File Transfer Protocol
TLS Thread-Local Storage
UID User Identifier
umask user file-creation mask
USB Universal Serial Bus
UTC Coordinated Universal Time
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>UUID</strong></th>
<th>Universally Unique Identifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>VC</strong></td>
<td>Virtual Console</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VGA</strong></td>
<td>Video Graphics Array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VT</strong></td>
<td>Virtual Terminal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix B. Acknowledgments

We would like to thank the following people and organizations for their contributions to the Linux From Scratch Project.

- **Gerard Beekmans** <gerard@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Creator
- **Bruce Dubbs** <bdubbs@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Managing Editor
- **Jim Gifford** <jim@linuxfromscratch.org> – CLFS Project Co-Leader
- **Pierre Labastie** <pierre@linuxfromscratch.org> – BLFS Editor and ALFS Lead
- **DJ Lucas** <dj@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS and BLFS Editor
- **Ken Moffat** <ken@linuxfromscratch.org> – BLFS Editor
- Countless other people on the various LFS and BLFS mailing lists who helped make this book possible by giving their suggestions, testing the book, and submitting bug reports, instructions, and their experiences with installing various packages.

Translators

- **Manuel Canales Esparcia** <macana@macana-es.com> – Spanish LFS translation project
- **Johan Lenglet** <johan@linuxfromscratch.org> – French LFS translation project until 2008
- **Jean-Philippe Mengual** <jmengual@linuxfromscratch.org> – French LFS translation project 2008-2016
- **Julien Lepiller** <jlepiller@linuxfromscratch.org> – French LFS translation project 2017-present
- **Anderson Lizardo** <lizardo@linuxfromscratch.org> – Portuguese LFS translation project
- **Thomas Reitelbach** <tr@erdfunkstelle.de> – German LFS translation project
- **Anton Maisak** <info@linuxfromscratch.org.ru> – Russian LFS translation project
- **Elena Shevcova** <helen@linuxfromscratch.org.ru> – Russian LFS translation project

Mirror Maintainers

North American Mirrors

- **Scott Kveton** <scott@osuosl.org> – lfs.oregonstate.edu mirror
- **William Astle** <lost@l-w.net> – ca.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- **Eujon Sellers** <jpolen@rackspace.com> – lfs.introspeed.com mirror
- **Justin Knierim** <tim@idge.net> – lfs-matrix.net mirror

South American Mirrors

- **Manuel Canales Esparcia** <manuel@linuxfromscratch.org> – lfsmirror.lfs-es.info mirror
- **Luis Falcon** <Luis Falcon> – torredehanoi.org mirror

European Mirrors

- **Guido Passet** <guido@primerelay.net> – nl.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- **Bastiaan Jacques** <baafie@planet.nl> – lfs.pagefault.net mirror
Linux From Scratch - Version 10.1-systemd

- Sven Cranshoff <sven.cranshoff@lineo.be> – lfs.lineo.be mirror
- Scarlet Belgium – lfs.scarlet.be mirror
- Sebastian Faulborn <info@aliensoft.org> – lfs.aliensoft.org mirror
- Stuart Fox <stuart@dontuse.ms> – lfs.dontuse.ms mirror
- Ralf Uhlemann <admin@realhost.de> – lfs.oss-mirror.org mirror
- Antonin Sprinzl <Antonin.Sprinzl@tuwien.ac.at> – at.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- Fredrik Danerklint <fredan-lfs@fredan.org> – se.linuxfromscratch.org mirror
- Franck <franck@linuxpourtous.com> – lfs.linuxpourtous.com mirror
- Philippe Baque <baque@cict.fr> – lfs.cict.fr mirror
- Vitaly Chekasin <gyouja@pilgrims.ru> – lfs.pilgrims.ru mirror
- Benjamin Heil <kontakt@wankoo.org> – lfs.wankoo.org mirror
- Anton Maisak <info@linuxfromscratch.org.ru> – linuxfromscratch.org.ru mirror

Asian Mirrors
- Satit Phernsawang <satit@wbac.ac.th> – lfs.phayoune.org mirror
- Shizunet Co.,Ltd. <info@shizu-net.jp> – lfs.mirror.shizu-net.jp mirror
- Init World <http://www.initworld.com/> – lfs.initworld.com mirror

Australian Mirrors
- Jason Andrade <jason@dstc.edu.au> – au.linuxfromscratch.org mirror

Former Project Team Members
- Christine Barczak <theladyskye@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Book Editor
- Archaic <archaic@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer/Editor, HLFS Project Leader, BLFS Editor, Hints and Patches Project Maintainer
- Matthew Burgess <matthew@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Project Leader, LFS Technical Writer/Editor
- Nathan Coulson <nathan@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS-Bootscripts Maintainer
- Timothy Bauscher
- Robert Briggs
- Ian Chilton
- Jeroen Coumans <jeroen@linuxfromscratch.org> – Website Developer, FAQ Maintainer
- Manuel Canales Esparcia <manuel@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS/BLFS/HLFS XML and XSL Maintainer
- Alex Groenewoud – LFS Technical Writer
- Marc Heerdink
- Jeremy Huntwork <jhuntwork@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer, LFS LiveCD Maintainer
- Bryan Kadzban <bryan@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer
- Mark Hymers
• Seth W. Klein – FAQ maintainer
• Nicholas Leippe <nicholas@linuxfromscratch.org> – Wiki Maintainer
• Anderson Lizardo <lizardo@linuxfromscratch.org> – Website Backend-Scripts Maintainer
• Randy McMurchy <randy@linuxfromscratch.org> – BLFS Project Leader, LFS Editor
• Dan Nicholson <dnicholson@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS and BLFS Editor
• Alexander E. Patrakov <alexander@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer, LFS Internationalization Editor, LFS Live CD Maintainer
• Simon Perreault
• Scot McPherson <scot@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS NNTP Gateway Maintainer
• Douglas R. Reno <renodr@linuxfromscratch.org> – Systemd Editor
• Ryan Oliver <ryan@linuxfromscratch.org> – CLFS Project Co-Leader
• Greg Schafer <gschafer@zip.com.au> – LFS Technical Writer and Architect of the Next Generation 64-bit-enabling Build Method
• Jesse Tie-Ten-Quee – LFS Technical Writer
• James Robertson <jwrober@linuxfromscratch.org> – Bugzilla Maintainer
• Tushar Teredesai <tushar@linuxfromscratch.org> – BLFS Book Editor, Hints and Patches Project Leader
• Jeremy Utley <jeremy@linuxfromscratch.org> – LFS Technical Writer, Bugzilla Maintainer, LFS-Bootscripts Maintainer
• Zack Winkles <zwinkles@gmail.com> – LFS Technical Writer
Appendix C. Dependencies

Every package built in LFS relies on one or more other packages in order to build and install properly. Some packages even participate in circular dependencies, that is, the first package depends on the second which in turn depends on the first. Because of these dependencies, the order in which packages are built in LFS is very important. The purpose of this page is to document the dependencies of each package built in LFS.

For each package we build, we have listed three, and sometimes four, types of dependencies. The first lists what other packages need to be available in order to compile and install the package in question. The second lists what packages, in addition to those on the first list, need to be available in order to run the test suites. The third list of dependencies are packages that require this package to be built and installed in its final location before they are built and installed. In most cases, this is because these packages will hard code paths to binaries within their scripts. If not built in a certain order, this could result in paths of /tools/bin/[binary] being placed inside scripts installed to the final system. This is obviously not desirable.

The last list of dependencies are optional packages that are not addressed in LFS, but could be useful to the user. These packages may have additional mandatory or optional dependencies of their own. For these dependencies, the recommended practice is to install them after completion of the LFS book and then go back and rebuild the LFS package. In several cases, re-installation is addressed in BLFS.

Acl

Installation depends on: Attr, Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: Automake, Diffutils, Findutils, and Libtool
Must be installed before: Coreutils, Sed, Tar, and Vim
Optional dependencies: None

Attr

Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: Automake, Diffutils, Findutils, and Libtool
Must be installed before: Acl and Libcap
Optional dependencies: None

Autoconf

Installation depends on: Bash, Coreutils, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: Automake, Diffutils, Findutils, GCC, and Libtool
Must be installed before: Automake
Optional dependencies: Emacs

Automake

Installation depends on: Autoconf, Bash, Coreutils, Gettext, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: Binutils, Bison, Bzip2, DejaGNU, Diffutils, Expect, Findutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Gzip, Libtool, and Tar
Must be installed before: None
Optional dependencies: None
Bash
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Patch, Readline, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: Shadow
Must be installed before: None
Optional dependencies: Xorg

Bc
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, and Make
Test suite depends on: Gawk
Must be installed before: Linux Kernel
Optional dependencies: None

Binutils
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, File, Flex, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Perl, Sed, Texinfo and Zlib
Test suite depends on: DejaGNU and Expect
Must be installed before: None
Optional dependencies: Debuginfod

Bison
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, Perl, and Sed
Test suite depends on: Diffutils, Findutils, and Flex
Must be installed before: Kbd and Tar
Optional dependencies: Doxygen (test suite)

Bzip2
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Patch
Test suite depends on: None
Must be installed before: File
Optional dependencies: None

Check
Installation depends on: GCC, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: None
Must be installed before: None
Optional dependencies: None

Coreutils
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, GMP, Grep, Libcap, Make, Patch, Perl, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: Diffutils, E2fsprogs, Findutils, Shadow, and Util-linux
Must be installed before: Bash, Diffutils, Eudev, Findutils, and Man-DB
Optional dependencies: Perl Expect and IO:Tty modules (for test suite)
### DejaGNU

- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
- **Test suite depends on:** None
- **Must be installed before:** None
- **Optional dependencies:** None

### Diffutils

- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
- **Test suite depends on:** Perl
- **Must be installed before:** None
- **Optional dependencies:** None

### E2fsprogs

- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Gzip, Make, Sed, Texinfo, and Util-linux
- **Test suite depends on:** Procps-ng and Psmisc
- **Must be installed before:** None
- **Optional dependencies:** None

### Eudev

- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Gperf, Make, Sed, and Util-linux
- **Test suite depends on:** None
- **Must be installed before:** None
- **Optional dependencies:** None

### Expat

- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed
- **Test suite depends on:** None
- **Must be installed before:** Python and XML::Parser
- **Optional dependencies:** None

### Expect

- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Patch, Sed, and Tcl
- **Test suite depends on:** None
- **Must be installed before:** None
- **Optional dependencies:** tk

### File

- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bzip2, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, Xz, and Zlib
- **Test suite depends on:** None
- **Must be installed before:** None
- **Optional dependencies:** None
### Findutils
**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** DejaGNU, Diffutils, and Expect  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

### Flex
**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, Patch, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Bison and Gawk  
**Must be installed before:** Binutils, IProute2, Kbd, Kmod, and Man-DB  
**Optional dependencies:** None

### Gawk
**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, GMP, Grep, Make, MPFR, Patch, Readline, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** libsigsegv

### GCC
**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, GMP, Grep, M4, Make, MPC, MPFR, Patch, Perl, Sed, Tar, Texinfo, and Zstd  
**Test suite depends on:** DejaGNU, Expect, and Shadow  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** GNAT and ISL

### GDBM
**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Grep, Make, and Sed  
**Test suite depends on:** None  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None

### Gettext
**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils, Perl, and Tcl  
**Must be installed before:** Automake and Bison  
**Optional dependencies:** None

### Glibc
**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Grep, Gzip, Linux API Headers, Make, Perl, Python, Sed, and Texinfo  
**Test suite depends on:** File  
**Must be installed before:** None  
**Optional dependencies:** None
**GMP**

*Installation depends on:* Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, M4, Make, Sed, and Texinfo

*Test suite depends on:* None

*Must be installed before:* MPFR and GCC

*Optional dependencies:* None

**Gperf**

*Installation depends on:* Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, and Make

*Test suite depends on:* Diffutils and Expect

*Must be installed before:* None

*Optional dependencies:* None

**Grep**

*Installation depends on:* Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Patch, Sed, and Texinfo

*Test suite depends on:* Gawk

*Must be installed before:* Man-DB

*Optional dependencies:* Pcre and libsigsegv

**Groff**

*Installation depends on:* Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Patch, Sed, and Texinfo

*Test suite depends on:* No test suite available

*Must be installed before:* Man-DB and Perl

*Optional dependencies:* Ghostscript

**GRUB**

*Installation depends on:* Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Sed, Texinfo, and Xz

*Test suite depends on:* None

*Must be installed before:* None

*Optional dependencies:* None

**Gzip**

*Installation depends on:* Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo

*Test suite depends on:* Diffutils and Less

*Must be installed before:* Man-DB

*Optional dependencies:* None

**Iana-Etc**

*Installation depends on:* Coreutils, Gawk, and Make

*Test suite depends on:* No test suite available

*Must be installed before:* Perl

*Optional dependencies:* None
## Inetutils

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Patch, Sed, Texinfo, and Zlib

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** Tar

**Optional dependencies:** None

## Intltool

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Gawk, Glibc, Make, Perl, Sed, and XML::Parser

**Test suite depends on:** Perl

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** None

## IProute2

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Bison, Coreutils, Flex, GCC, Glibc, Make, Libcap, Libelf, and Linux API Headers

**Test suite depends on:** No test suite available

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** Berkeley DB and Iptables

## Kbd

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Check, Coreutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Gzip, Make, Patch, and Sed

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** None

## Kmod

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, Flex, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Gzip, Make, Pkg-config, Sed, Xz-Utils, and Zlib

**Test suite depends on:** No test suite available

**Must be installed before:** Eudev

**Optional dependencies:** None

## Less

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

**Test suite depends on:** No test suite available

**Must be installed before:** Gzip

**Optional dependencies:** Pcre

## Libcap

**Installation depends on:** Attr, Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Perl, Make, and Sed

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** IProute2 and Shadow

**Optional dependencies:** Linux-PAM
Libelf
- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, and Make
- **Test suite depends on:** None
- **Must be installed before:** IProute2 and Linux Kernel
- **Optional dependencies:** None

Libffi
- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Sed
- **Test suite depends on:** DejaGnu
- **Must be installed before:** Python
- **Optional dependencies:** None

Libpipeline
- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
- **Test suite depends on:** Check
- **Must be installed before:** Man-DB
- **Optional dependencies:** None

Libtool
- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
- **Test suite depends on:** Autoconf, Automake, and Findutils
- **Must be installed before:** None
- **Optional dependencies:** None

Linux Kernel
- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Bc, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Gzip, Kmod, Libelf, Make, Ncurses, OpenSSL, Perl, and Sed
- **Test suite depends on:** No test suite available
- **Must be installed before:** None
- **Optional dependencies:** None

M4
- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
- **Test suite depends on:** Diffutils
- **Must be installed before:** Autoconf and Bison
- **Optional dependencies:** libsigsegv

Make
- **Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
- **Test suite depends on:** Perl and Procps-ng
- **Must be installed before:** None
- **Optional dependencies:** None
Man-DB
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Bzip2, Coreutils, Flex, GCC, GDBM, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Groff, Gzip, Less, Libpipeline, Make, Sed, and Xz
Test suite depends on: Util-linux
Must be installed before: None
Optional dependencies: None

Man-Pages
Installation depends on: Bash, Coreutils, and Make
Test suite depends on: No test suite available
Must be installed before: None
Optional dependencies: None

Meson
Installation depends on: Ninja and Python
Test suite depends on: No test suite available
Must be installed before: Systemd
Optional dependencies: None

MPC
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, GMP, Make, MPFR, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: None
Must be installed before: GCC
Optional dependencies: None

MPFR
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, GMP, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: None
Must be installed before: Gawk and GCC
Optional dependencies: None

Ncurses
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Patch, and Sed
Test suite depends on: No test suite available
Must be installed before: Bash, GRUB, Inetutils, Less, Procps-ng, Psmisc, Readline, Texinfo, Util-linux, and Vim
Optional dependencies: None

Ninja
Installation depends on: Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, and Python
Test suite depends on: None
Must be installed before: Meson
Optional dependencies: Asciidoc, Doxygen, Emacs, and re2c
**Openssl**

**Installation depends on:** Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Make, and Perl

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** Linux

**Optional dependencies:** None

---

**Patch**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** Ed

---

**Perl**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, GDBM, Glibc, Grep, Groff, Make, Sed, and Zlib

**Test suite depends on:** Iana-Etc and Procps-ng

**Must be installed before:** Autoconf

**Optional dependencies:** None

---

**Pkg-config**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Popt, and Sed

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** Kmod

**Optional dependencies:** None

---

**Popt**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, and Make

**Test suite depends on:** Diffutils and Sed

**Must be installed before:** Pkg-config

**Optional dependencies:** None

---

**Procps-ng**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Ncurses

**Test suite depends on:** DejaGNU

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** None

---

**Psmisc**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

**Test suite depends on:** No test suite available

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** None
Python
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Expat, GCC, Gdbm, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Libffi, Make, Ncurses, Sed, and Util-linux
Test suite depends on: GDB and Valgrind
Must be installed before: Ninja
Optional dependencies: Berkeley DB, OpenSSL, SQLite, and Tk

Readline
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Patch, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: No test suite available
Must be installed before: Bash and Gawk
Optional dependencies: None

Sed
Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Sed, and Texinfo
Test suite depends on: Diffutils and Gawk
Must be installed before: E2fsprogs, File, Libtool, and Shadow
Optional dependencies: None

Shadow
Installation depends on: Acl, Attr, Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Libcap, Make, and Sed
Test suite depends on: No test suite available
Must be installed before: Coreutils
Optional dependencies: Cracklib and PAM

Sysklogd
Installation depends on: Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Patch
Test suite depends on: No test suite available
Must be installed before: None
Optional dependencies: None

Systemd
Installation depends on: Acl, Attr, Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Expat, Gawk, GCC, Glibc, Gperf, Grep, Intltool, Libcap, Meson, Sed, and Util-linux
Test suite depends on: None
Must be installed before: None
Optional dependencies: Many, see BLFS systemd page

Sysvinit
Installation depends on: Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Sed
Test suite depends on: No test suite available
Must be installed before: None
Optional dependencies: None
**Tar**

**Installation depends on:** Acl, Attr, Bash, Binutils, Bison, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Inetutils, Make, Sed, and Texinfo

**Test suite depends on:** Autoconf, Diffutils, Findutils, Gawk, and Gzip

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** None

---

**Tcl**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, and Sed

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** None

---

**Texinfo**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Patch, and Sed

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** None

---

**Util-linux**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, Eudev, Findutils, Gawk, GCC, Gettext, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, Sed, and Zlib

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** Libcap-ng

---

**Vim**

**Installation depends on:** Acl, Attr, Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, Grep, Make, Ncurses, and Sed

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** None

**Optional dependencies:** Xorg, GTK+2, LessTif, Python, Tcl, Ruby, and GPM

---

**XML::Parser**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Expat, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Perl

**Test suite depends on:** Perl

**Must be installed before:** Intltool

**Optional dependencies:** None

---

**Xz**

**Installation depends on:** Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, Diffutils, GCC, Glibc, and Make

**Test suite depends on:** None

**Must be installed before:** Eudev, File, GRUB, Kmod, and Man-DB

**Optional dependencies:** None
Zlib

Installation depends on: Bash, Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Make, and Sed
Test suite depends on: None
Must be installed before: File, Kmod, Perl, and Util-linux
Optional dependencies: None

Zstd

Installation depends on: Binutils, Coreutils, GCC, Glibc, Gzip, Make, and Xz
Test suite depends on: None
Must be installed before: GCC
Optional dependencies: None
Appendix D. LFS Licenses

This book is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 License.

Computer instructions may be extracted from the book under the MIT License.

D.1. Creative Commons License

Creative Commons Legal Code

Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0

---

**Important**

CREATIVE COMMONS CORPORATION IS NOT A LAW FIRM AND DOES NOT PROVIDE LEGAL SERVICES. DISTRIBUTION OF THIS LICENSE DOES NOT CREATE AN ATTORNEY-CLIENT RELATIONSHIP. CREATIVE COMMONS PROVIDES THIS INFORMATION ON AN "AS-IS" BASIS. CREATIVE COMMONS MAKES NO WARRANTIES REGARDING THE INFORMATION PROVIDED, AND DISCLAIMS LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ITS USE.

License

THE WORK (AS DEFINED BELOW) IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS CREATIVE COMMONS PUBLIC LICENSE ("CCPL" OR "LICENSE"). THE WORK IS PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT AND/OR OTHER APPLICABLE LAW. ANY USE OF THE WORK OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED UNDER THIS LICENSE OR COPYRIGHT LAW IS PROHIBITED.

BY EXERCISING ANY RIGHTS TO THE WORK PROVIDED HERE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE. THE LICENSOR GRANTS YOU THE RIGHTS CONTAINED HERE IN CONSIDERATION OF YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF SUCH TERMS AND CONDITIONS.

1. Definitions

a. "Collective Work" means a work, such as a periodical issue, anthology or encyclopedia, in which the Work in its entirety in unmodified form, along with a number of other contributions, constituting separate and independent works in themselves, are assembled into a collective whole. A work that constitutes a Collective Work will not be considered a Derivative Work (as defined below) for the purposes of this License.

b. "Derivative Work" means a work based upon the Work or upon the Work and other pre-existing works, such as a translation, musical arrangement, dramatization, fictionalization, motion picture version, sound recording, art reproduction, abridgment, condensation, or any other form in which the Work may be recast, transformed, or adapted, except that a work that constitutes a Collective Work will not be considered a Derivative Work for the purpose of this License. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a musical composition or sound recording, the synchronization of the Work in timed-relation with a moving image ("synching") will be considered a Derivative Work for the purpose of this License.

c. "Licensor" means the individual or entity that offers the Work under the terms of this License.

d. "Original Author" means the individual or entity who created the Work.

e. "Work" means the copyrightable work of authorship offered under the terms of this License.

f. "You" means an individual or entity exercising rights under this License who has not previously violated the terms of this License with respect to the Work, or who has received express permission from the Licensor to exercise rights under this License despite a previous violation.
g. "License Elements" means the following high-level license attributes as selected by Licensor and indicated in the title of this License: Attribution, Noncommercial, ShareAlike.

2. Fair Use Rights. Nothing in this license is intended to reduce, limit, or restrict any rights arising from fair use, first sale or other limitations on the exclusive rights of the copyright owner under copyright law or other applicable laws.

3. License Grant. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, Licensor hereby grants You a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright) license to exercise the rights in the Work as stated below:
   a. to reproduce the Work, to incorporate the Work into one or more Collective Works, and to reproduce the Work as incorporated in the Collective Works;
   b. to create and reproduce Derivative Works;
   c. to distribute copies or phonorecords of, display publicly, perform publicly, and perform publicly by means of a digital audio transmission the Work including as incorporated in Collective Works;
   d. to distribute copies or phonorecords of, display publicly, perform publicly, and perform publicly by means of a digital audio transmission Derivative Works;

The above rights may be exercised in all media and formats whether now known or hereafter devised. The above rights include the right to make such modifications as are technically necessary to exercise the rights in other media and formats. All rights not expressly granted by Licensor are hereby reserved, including but not limited to the rights set forth in Sections 4(e) and 4(f).

4. Restrictions. The license granted in Section 3 above is expressly made subject to and limited by the following restrictions:
   a. You may distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Work only under the terms of this License, and You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License with every copy or phonorecord of the Work You distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Work that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients’ exercise of the rights granted hereunder. You may not sublicense the Work. You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Work with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner inconsistent with the terms of this License Agreement. The above applies to the Work as incorporated in a Collective Work, but this does not require the Collective Work apart from the Work itself to be made subject to the terms of this License. If You create a Collective Work, upon notice from any Licensor You must, to the extent practicable, remove from the Collective Work any reference to such Licensor or the Original Author, as requested. If You create a Derivative Work, upon notice from any Licensor You must, to the extent practicable, remove from the Derivative Work any reference to such Licensor or the Original Author, as requested.
   b. You may distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform a Derivative Work only under the terms of this License, a later version of this License with the same License Elements as this License, or a Creative Commons iCommons license that contains the same License Elements as this License (e.g. Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 Japan). You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License or other license specified in the previous sentence with every copy or phonorecord of each Derivative Work You distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Derivative Works that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients’ exercise of the rights granted hereunder, and You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Derivative Work with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner
inconsistent with the terms of this License Agreement. The above applies to the Derivative Work as incorporated in a Collective Work, but this does not require the Collective Work apart from the Derivative Work itself to be made subject to the terms of this License.

c. You may not exercise any of the rights granted to You in Section 3 above in any manner that is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation. The exchange of the Work for other copyrighted works by means of digital file-sharing or otherwise shall not be considered to be intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation, provided there is no payment of any monetary compensation in connection with the exchange of copyrighted works.

d. If you distribute, publicly display, publicly perform, or publicly digitally perform the Work or any Derivative Works or Collective Works, You must keep intact all copyright notices for the Work and give the Original Author credit reasonable to the medium or means You are utilizing by conveying the name (or pseudonym if applicable) of the Original Author if supplied; the title of the Work if supplied; to the extent reasonably practicable, the Uniform Resource Identifier, if any, that Licensor specifies to be associated with the Work, unless such URI does not refer to the copyright notice or licensing information for the Work; and in the case of a Derivative Work, a credit identifying the use of the Work in the Derivative Work (e.g., "French translation of the Work by Original Author," or "Screenplay based on original Work by Original Author"). Such credit may be implemented in any reasonable manner; provided, however, that in the case of a Derivative Work or Collective Work, at a minimum such credit will appear where any other comparable authorship credit appears and in a manner at least as prominent as such other comparable authorship credit.

e. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a musical composition:

i. Performance Royalties Under Blanket Licenses. Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a performance rights society (e.g. ASCAP, BMI, SESAC), royalties for the public performance or public digital performance (e.g. webcast) of the Work if that performance is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.

ii. Mechanical Rights and Statutory Royalties. Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a music rights agency or designated agent (e.g. Harry Fox Agency), royalties for any phonorecord You create from the Work ("cover version") and distribute, subject to the compulsory license created by 17 USC Section 115 of the US Copyright Act (or the equivalent in other jurisdictions), if Your distribution of such cover version is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.

6. Webcasting Rights and Statutory Royalties. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a sound recording, Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a performance-rights society (e.g. SoundExchange), royalties for the public digital performance (e.g. webcast) of the Work, subject to the compulsory license created by 17 USC Section 114 of the US Copyright Act (or the equivalent in other jurisdictions), if Your public digital performance is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.

f. Webcasting Rights and Statutory Royalties. For the avoidance of doubt, where the Work is a sound recording, Licensor reserves the exclusive right to collect, whether individually or via a performance-rights society (e.g. SoundExchange), royalties for the public digital performance (e.g. webcast) of the Work, subject to the compulsory license created by 17 USC Section 114 of the US Copyright Act (or the equivalent in other jurisdictions), if Your public digital performance is primarily intended for or directed toward commercial advantage or private monetary compensation.
UNLESS OTHERWISE MUTUALLY AGREED TO BY THE PARTIES IN WRITING, LICENSOR OFFERS THE WORK AS-IS AND MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND CONCERNING THE WORK, EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES OF TITLE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, NONINFRINGEMENT, OR THE ABSENCE OF LATENT OR OTHER DEFECTS, ACCURACY, OR THE PRESENCE OF ABSENCE OF ERRORS, WHETHER OR NOT DISCOVERABLE. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO SUCH EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Limitation on Liability. EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL LICENSOR BE LIABLE TO YOU ON ANY LEGAL THEORY FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS LICENSE OR THE USE OF THE WORK, EVEN IF LICENSOR HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

7. Termination

a. This License and the rights granted hereunder will terminate automatically upon any breach by You of the terms of this License. Individuals or entities who have received Derivative Works or Collective Works from You under this License, however, will not have their licenses terminated provided such individuals or entities remain in full compliance with those licenses. Sections 1, 2, 5, 6, 7, and 8 will survive any termination of this License.

b. Subject to the above terms and conditions, the license granted here is perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright in the Work). Notwithstanding the above, Licensor reserves the right to release the Work under different license terms or to stop distributing the Work at any time; provided, however that any such election will not serve to withdraw this License (or any other license that has been, or is required to be, granted under the terms of this License), and this License will continue in full force and effect unless terminated as stated above.

8. Miscellaneous

a. Each time You distribute or publicly digitally perform the Work or a Collective Work, the Licensor offers to the recipient a license to the Work on the same terms and conditions as the license granted to You under this License.

b. Each time You distribute or publicly digitally perform a Derivative Work, Licensor offers to the recipient a license to the original Work on the same terms and conditions as the license granted to You under this License.

c. If any provision of this License is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this License, and without further action by the parties to this agreement, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.

d. No term or provision of this License shall be deemed waived and no breach consented to unless such waiver or consent shall be in writing and signed by the party to be charged with such waiver or consent.

e. This License constitutes the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the Work licensed here. There are no understandings, agreements or representations with respect to the Work not specified here. Licensor shall not be bound by any additional provisions that may appear in any communication from You. This License may not be modified without the mutual written agreement of the Licensor and You.
Important

Creative Commons is not a party to this License, and makes no warranty whatsoever in connection with
the Work. Creative Commons will not be liable to You or any party on any legal theory for any damages
whatsoever, including without limitation any general, special, incidental or consequential damages arising
in connection to this license. Notwithstanding the foregoing two (2) sentences, if Creative Commons has
expressly identified itself as the Licensor hereunder, it shall have all rights and obligations of Licensor.

Except for the limited purpose of indicating to the public that the Work is licensed under the CCPL, neither
party will use the trademark "Creative Commons" or any related trademark or logo of Creative Commons
without the prior written consent of Creative Commons. Any permitted use will be in compliance with
Creative Commons' then-current trademark usage guidelines, as may be published on its website or otherwise
made available upon request from time to time.

Creative Commons may be contacted at http://creativecommons.org/.

D.2. The MIT License

Copyright © 1999-2021 Gerard Beekmans

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated
documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights
to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons
to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the
Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED,
INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR
A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR
COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN
AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH
THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.
Index

Packages

Acl: 128
Attr: 127
Autoconf: 162
Automake: 163
Bash: 149
tools: 57
Bash: 149
tools: 57
Bc: 114
Binutils: 120
tools, pass 1: 43
tools, pass 2: 70
Binutils: 120
tools, pass 1: 43
tools, pass 2: 70
Binutils: 120
tools, pass 1: 43
tools, pass 2: 70
Bison: 147
tools: 83
Bison: 147
tools: 83
Bzip2: 105
Check: 181
Coreutils: 175
tools: 58
Coreutils: 175
tools: 58
D-Bus: 215
DejaGNU: 119
Diffutils: 182
tools: 59
Diffutils: 182
tools: 59
E2fsprogs: 224
Expat: 154
Expect: 118
File: 110
tools: 60
File: 110
tools: 60
Findutils: 184
tools: 61
Findutils: 184
tools: 61
Flex: 115
Gawk: 183
tools: 62
Gawk: 183
tools: 62
GCC: 134

tools, libstdc++ pass 1: 52
tools, libstdc++ pass 2: 80
tools, pass 1: 45
tools, pass 2: 71
GCC: 134

tools, libstdc++ pass 1: 52
tools, libstdc++ pass 2: 80
tools, pass 1: 45
tools, pass 2: 71
GCC: 134

tools, libstdc++ pass 1: 52
tools, libstdc++ pass 2: 80
tools, pass 1: 45
tools, pass 2: 71
GCC: 134

tools, libstdc++ pass 1: 52
tools, libstdc++ pass 2: 80
tools, pass 1: 45
tools, pass 2: 71
GCC: 134

tools, libstdc++ pass 1: 52
tools, libstdc++ pass 2: 80
tools, pass 1: 45
tools, pass 2: 71
GDBM: 152
Gettext: 145
tools: 82
Gettext: 145
tools: 82
Glibc: 97
tools: 49
Glibc: 97
tools: 49
GMP: 123
Gperf: 153
Grep: 148
tools: 63
Grep: 148
tools: 63
Groff: 185
GRUB: 188
Gzip: 191
tools: 64
Gzip: 191
tools: 64
Iana-Etc: 96
Inetutils: 155
Intltool: 161
IPRoute2: 193
Kbd: 195
Kmod: 164
Less: 190
Libcap: 129
Libelf: 166
libffi: 167
Libpipeline: 197
Libtool: 151
Linux: 250
tools, API headers: 48
Linux: 250
tools, API headers: 48
M4: 113
tools: 54
M4: 113
tools: 54
Make: 198
tools: 65
Make: 198
tools: 65
Man-DB: 200
Man-pages: 95
Meson: 174
MPC: 126
MPFR: 125
Ncurses: 140
tools: 55
Ncurses: 140
tools: 55
Ninja: 172
OpenSSL: 168
Patch: 199
tools: 66
Patch: 199
tools: 66
Perl: 157
tools: 84
Perl: 157
tools: 84
Pkgconfig: 139
Procps-ng: 217
Psmisc: 144
Python: 170
temporary: 85
Python: 170
temporary: 85
Readline: 111
Sed: 143
tools: 67
Sed: 143
tools: 67
Shadow: 130
configuring: 131
Shadow: 130
configuring: 131
systemd: 209
Tar: 203
tools: 68
Tar: 203
tools: 68
Tcl: 116
Texinfo: 204
temporary: 86
Texinfo: 204
temporary: 86
Udev
usage: 234
Util-linux: 219
tools: 87
Util-linux: 219
tools: 87
Vim: 206
XML::Parser: 160
Xz: 107
tools: 69
Xz: 107
tools: 69
Zlib: 104
zstd: 109

Programs
[: 175, 176
2to3: 170
accessdb: 200, 201

285
aclocal: 163, 163
aclocal-1.16: 163, 163
addftinfo: 185, 185
addpart: 219, 220
addr2line: 120, 121
afmtodit: 185, 185
agetty: 219, 220
apropos: 200, 202
ar: 120, 121
as: 120, 121
attr: 127, 127
autoconf: 162, 162
autoheader: 162, 162
autom4te: 162, 162
automake: 163, 163
automake-1.16: 163, 163
autoupdate: 162, 162
awk: 183, 183
b2sum: 175, 177
badblocks: 224, 225
base64: 175, 176
base64: 175, 176
basename: 175, 177
basenc: 175, 177
bash: 149, 150
bashbug: 149, 150
bc: 114, 114
bison: 147, 147
blkdiscard: 219, 220
blkid: 219, 220
blkzone: 219, 220
blockdev: 219, 220
bootctl: 209, 212
bridge: 193, 193
bunzip2: 105, 106
busctl: 209, 212
bzcat: 105, 106
bzcmp: 105, 106
bzdiff: 105, 106
bzegrep: 105, 106
bzfgrep: 105, 106
bzgrep: 105, 106
bzip2: 105, 106
bzip2recover: 105, 106
bzless: 105, 106
bzmore: 105, 106
++: 134, 137
++filt: 120, 122
cal: 219, 220
capsh: 129, 129
captoinfo: 140, 142
cat: 175, 177
catchsegv: 97, 102
catman: 200, 202
cc: 134, 137
cfdisk: 219, 220
chac: 128, 128
chage: 130, 132
chattr: 224, 225
chcon: 175, 177
chcpu: 219, 220
checkmk: 181, 181
chem: 185, 185
chfn: 130, 132
chgrp: 175, 177
chpasswd: 130, 132
chgrp: 175, 177
chmod: 175, 177
chroot: 175, 177
chsh: 130, 132
chvt: 195, 196
cksum: 175, 177
cmp: 182, 182
col: 219, 220
colcrt: 219, 220
colrm: 219, 220
column: 219, 220
comm: 175, 177
compile_et: 224, 225
coredumpctl: 209, 212
corelist: 157, 158
cp: 175, 177
cpan: 157, 158
cpp: 134, 137
csplit: 175, 177
ctraltdel: 219, 220
ctstat: 193, 193
cut: 175, 177
c_rehash: 168, 168
date: 175, 177
dbus-cleanup-sockets: 215, 216
dbus-daemon: 215, 216
dbus-launch: 215, 216
dbus-monitor: 215, 216
dbus-run-session: 215, 216
dbus-send: 215, 216
dbus-test-tool: 215, 216
dbus-update-activation-environment: 215, 216
dbus-uuidgen: 215, 216
dc: 114, 114
dd: 175, 177
deallocvt: 195, 196
debugfs: 224, 225
delpart: 219, 220
depmod: 164, 164
df: 175, 177
diff: 182, 182
diff3: 182, 182
dir: 175, 177
dircolors: 175, 177
dirname: 175, 177
dmsg: 219, 220
dnsdomainname: 155, 156
du: 175, 177
dumpe2fs: 224, 225
dumpkeys: 195, 196
e2freefrag: 224, 225
e2fsck: 224, 225
e2image: 224, 225
e2label: 224, 225
e2mmpstatus: 224, 225
e2scrub: 224, 225
e2scrub_all: 224, 225
e2undo: 224, 225
e4crypt: 224, 225
e4defrag: 224, 225
echo: 175, 177
egrep: 148, 148
eject: 219, 220
elfedit: 120, 122
enc2xs: 157, 158
encguess: 157, 158
env: 175, 177
envsubst: 145, 145
eqn: 185, 185
eqn2graph: 185, 185
ex: 206, 208
expand: 175, 177
expect: 118, 118
expiry: 130, 132
expr: 175, 177
factor: 175, 177
faillog: 130, 132
fallocate: 219, 220
false: 175, 177
fdformat: 219, 220
disk: 219, 221
fgconsole: 195, 196
fgrep: 148, 148
file: 110, 110
filefrag: 224, 226
fincore: 219, 221
find: 184, 184
findfs: 219, 221
findmnt: 219, 221
flex: 115, 115
flex++: 115, 115
flock: 219, 221
fmt: 175, 177
fold: 175, 177
free: 217, 218
fsck: 219, 221
fsck.cramfs: 219, 221
fsck.ext2: 224, 226
fsck.ext3: 224, 226
fsck.ext4: 224, 226
fsck.minix: 219, 221
fsfreeze: 219, 221
fstrim: 219, 221
ftp: 155, 156
fuser: 144, 144
g++: 134, 137
gawk: 183, 183
gawk-5.1.0: 183, 183
gcc: 134, 137
gc-ar: 134, 137
gc-nm: 134, 137
gc-ranlib: 134, 138
gcov: 134, 138
gcov-dump: 134, 138
pidof: 217, 218
ping: 155, 156
ping6: 155, 156
pinky: 175, 178
pip3: 170
pivot_root: 219, 222
pkg-config: 139, 139
pkill: 217, 218
pl2pm: 157, 159
pldd: 97, 103
pmap: 217, 218
pod2html: 157, 159
pod2man: 157, 159
pod2texi: 204, 205
pod2text: 157, 159
pod2usage: 157, 159
podchecker: 157, 159
podselect: 157, 159
portablectl: 209, 212
post-grohtml: 185, 186
poweroff: 209, 213
pr: 175, 178
pre-grohtml: 185, 186
preconv: 185, 186
printenv: 175, 178
printf: 175, 178
prlimit: 219, 222
prove: 157, 159
prstat: 144, 144
ps: 217, 218
psfaddtable: 195, 196
psfgettable: 195, 196
psfstriptable: 195, 196
psfxttable: 195, 196
pslog: 144, 144
pstone: 144, 144
pstreet: 144, 144
pstreet.x11: 144, 144
ptar: 157, 159
ptardiff: 157, 159
ptargrep: 157, 159
ptx: 175, 178
pwait: 217, 218
pwck: 130, 133
pwconv: 130, 133
pwd: 175, 178
pwdx: 217, 218
pwunconv: 130, 133
pydoc3: 170
python3: 170
ranlib: 120, 122
raw: 219, 222
readelf: 120, 122
readlink: 175, 178
readprofile: 219, 222
realpath: 175, 178
reboot: 209, 213
recode-sr-latin: 145, 146
refer: 185, 186
rename: 219, 222
renice: 219, 222
reset: 140, 142
resize2fs: 224, 226
resizepart: 219, 222
resolvconf: 209, 213
resolvectl: 209, 213
rev: 219, 222
rkfill: 219, 222
rm: 175, 178
rmdir: 175, 178
rmmod: 164, 165
roff2dvi: 185, 186
roff2html: 185, 187
roff2pdf: 185, 187
roff2ps: 185, 187
roff2text: 185, 187
roff2x: 185, 187
route: 193, 194
rutel: 193, 194
rtacct: 193, 194
rtcwake: 219, 222
rtmon: 193, 194
rptr: 193, 194
rtstat: 193, 194
runcon: 175, 178
runlevel: 209, 213
runtest: 119, 119
rvew: 206, 208
rvim: 206, 208
script: 219, 222
scriptreplay: 219, 222
sdiff: 182, 182
setarch: 219, 222
setarch: 219, 222
setcap: 129, 129
setfacl: 128, 128
setfattr: 127, 127
setfont: 195, 196
setkeycodes: 195, 196
setleds: 195, 196
setmetamode: 195, 196
setsid: 219, 222
setterm: 219, 222
setvtrgb: 195, 196
sfdisk: 219, 222
sg: 130, 133
sh: 149, 150
sha1sum: 175, 178
sha224sum: 175, 178
sha256sum: 175, 179
sha384sum: 175, 179
sha512sum: 175, 179
shasum: 157, 159
showconsolefont: 195, 196
showkey: 195, 196
shred: 175, 179
shuf: 175, 179
shutdown: 209, 213
size: 120, 122
slabtop: 217, 218
sleep: 175, 179
sln: 97, 103
soelim: 185, 187
sort: 175, 179
sotruss: 97, 103
split: 175, 179
sprof: 97, 103
ss: 193, 194
stat: 175, 179
stdbuf: 175, 179
strings: 120, 122
strip: 120, 122
stty: 175, 179
su: 130, 133
sulogin: 219, 222
sum: 175, 179
swaplabel: 219, 222
swapoff: 219, 222
swapon: 219, 222
switch_root: 219, 222
sync: 175, 179
sysctl: 217, 218
systemctl: 209, 213
systemd-analyze: 209, 213
systemd-ask-password: 209, 213
systemd-cat: 209, 213
systemd-cgls: 209, 213
systemd-cgtop: 209, 213
systemd-delta: 209, 213
systemd-detect-virt: 209, 213
systemd-dissect: 209, 213
systemd-escape: 209, 213
systemd-hwdb: 209, 213
systemd-id128: 209, 213
systemd-inhibit: 209, 213
systemd-machine-id-setup: 209, 213
systemd-mount: 209, 213
systemd-notify: 209, 213
systemd-nspawn: 209, 213
systemd-path: 209, 214
systemd-repart: 209, 214
systemd-resolve: 209, 214
systemd-run: 209, 214
systemd-socket-activate: 209, 214
systemd-tmpfiles: 209, 214
systemd-tty-ask-password-agent: 209, 214
systemd-umount: 209, 214
tabs: 140, 142
tac: 175, 179
tail: 175, 179
tailf: 219, 222	talk: 155, 156
tar: 203, 203	taskset: 219, 223
tbl: 185, 187
tc: 193, 194
tclsh: 116, 117
tcsh: 116, 117
tclsh8.6: 116, 117
tee: 175, 179
telinit: 209, 214
telnet: 155, 156
test: 175, 179
texi2dvi: 204, 205
texi2pdf: 204, 205
texi2any: 204, 205	texindex: 204, 205
tfmtodit: 185, 187
tftp: 155, 156
 tic: 140, 142
timedatectl: 209, 214
 timeout: 175, 179
tload: 217, 218
toe: 140, 142
top: 217, 218
touch: 175, 179
tput: 140, 142
tr: 175, 179
traceroute: 155, 156
troff: 185, 187
true: 175, 179
truncate: 175, 179
tset: 140, 142
tsort: 175, 179
tty: 175, 179
tune2fs: 224, 226
tzselect: 97, 103
udevadm: 209, 214
umount: 219, 223
uname: 175, 179
uname26: 219, 223
uncompress: 191, 191
unexpand: 175, 179
unicode_start: 195, 196
unicode_stop: 195, 196
uniq: 175, 179
unlink: 175, 179
unlzma: 107, 108
unshare: 219, 223
unxz: 107, 108
updatedb: 184, 184
uptime: 217, 218
useradd: 130, 133
userdel: 130, 133
usermod: 130, 133
users: 175, 179
utmpdump: 219, 223
uuidd: 219, 223
uuidgen: 219, 223
uuidparse: 219, 223
vdir: 175, 179
vi: 206, 208
view: 206, 208
vigr: 130, 133
vim: 206, 208
vimdiff: 206, 208
vimtutor: 206, 208
vipw: 130, 133
vmstat: 217, 218
w: 217, 218
wall: 219, 223
watch: 217, 218
wc: 175, 179
wdctl: 219, 223
whatis: 200, 202
whereis: 219, 223
who: 175, 179
whoami: 175, 179
wipefs: 219, 223
x86_64: 219, 223
xargs: 184, 184
xgettext: 145, 146
xmlwf: 154, 154
xsubpp: 157, 159
xtrace: 97, 103
xxd: 206, 208
xz: 107, 108
xzcat: 107, 108
xzcmp: 107, 108
xzdec: 107, 108
xzdiff: 107, 108
xzegrep: 107, 108
xzfgrep: 107, 108
xzgrep: 107, 108
xzless: 107, 108
zcat: 191, 191
zcmp: 191, 191
zdiff: 191, 191
zdump: 97, 103
zegrep: 191, 191
zfgrep: 191, 191
zgrep: 191, 191
zic: 97, 103
zipdetails: 157, 159
zless: 191, 191
zmore: 191, 192
znew: 191, 192
zramctl: 219, 223
zstd: 109, 109
zstdgrep: 109, 109
zstdless: 109, 109

Libraries

Expat: 160, 160
ld-2.33.so: 97, 103
libacl: 128, 128
libanl: 97, 103
libasprintf: 145, 146
libattr: 127, 127
libbfd: 120, 122
libblkid: 219, 223
libBrokenLocale: 97, 103
libbz2: 105, 106
libc: 97, 103
libcap: 129, 129
libcheck: 181, 181
libcom_err: 224, 226
libcrypt: 97, 103
libcrypto.so: 168, 169
libctf: 120, 122
libctf-nobfd: 120, 122
libcrypt: 224, 226
libdbus-1: 215, 216
libdl: 97, 103
libexpat: 154, 154
libext2fs: 224, 226
libffi: 167
libfinfo: 115, 115
libformw: 140, 142
libg: 97, 103
libgcc: 134, 138
libgco: 134, 138
libgdbm: 152, 152
libgdbm_compat: 152, 152
libgettextlib: 145, 146
libgettextpsi: 145, 146
libgettextsrc: 145, 146
libgmp: 123, 124
libgmpxx: 123, 124
libgomp: 134, 138
libhistory: 111, 112
libkmod: 164
liblsan: 134, 138
libltdl: 151, 151
liblto_plugin: 134, 138
liblzma: 107, 108
libm: 97, 103
libmagic: 110, 110
libman: 200, 202
libmount: 219, 223
libmpc: 126, 126
libmpfr: 125, 125
libncursesw: 140, 142
libnsl: 97, 103
libnss: 97, 103
libopcodes: 120, 122
libpanelw: 140, 142
libpcprofile: 97, 103
libpipeline: 197
libprocps: 217, 218
libpsx: 129, 129
libpthread: 97, 103
libresolv: 97, 103
librt: 97, 103
libSegFault: 97, 103
libsmartcols: 219, 223
libssl: 224, 226
libssl.so: 168, 169
libssp: 134, 138
libstdc++: 134, 138
libsupc++: 134, 138
libsystemd: 209, 214
libtdbg.8.so: 116, 117
libtdbg.8.a: 116, 117
libtextstyle: 145, 146
libthread_db: 97, 103
libtsan: 134, 138
libubsan: 134, 138
libudev: 209, 214

294
libutil: 97, 103
libuuid: 219, 223
liby: 147, 147
libz: 104, 104
libzstd: 109, 109
preallocable_libintl: 145, 146

**Scripts**

clock
  configuring: 238
console
  configuring: 239
hostname
  configuring: 233
localnet
  /etc/hosts: 233
network
  /etc/hosts: 233
  configuring: 230
network
  /etc/hosts: 233
  configuring: 230
dwp: 120, 122

**Others**

/boot/config-5.10.17: 250, 254
/boot/System.map-5.10.17: 250, 254
/dev/*: 73
/etc/fstab: 248
/etc/group: 76
/etc/hosts: 233
/etc/inputrc: 242
/etc/ld.so.conf: 101
/etc/lfs-release: 257
/etc/localtime: 100
/etc/lsb-release: 257
/etc/modprobe.d/usb.conf: 253
/etc/nsswitch.conf: 100
/etc/os-release: 257
/etc/passwd: 76
/etc/protocols: 96
/etc/resolv.conf: 232
/etc/services: 96
/etc/vimrc: 207
/run/utmp: 76
/usr/include/asm-generic/*: 48, 48
/usr/include/asm/*: 48, 48
/usr/include/drm/*: 48, 48
/usr/include/linux/*: 48, 48
/usr/include/misc/*: 48, 48
/usr/include/mtd/*: 48, 48
/usr/include/rdma/*: 48, 48
/usr/include/scsi/*: 48, 48
/usr/include/sound/*: 48, 48
/usr/include/video/*: 48, 48
/var/log/btmp: 76
/var/log/lastlog: 76
/var/log/wtmp: 76
/etc/locale.conf: 240
/etc/shells: 244
man pages: 95, 95
Systemd Customization: 244